

5e

# ADVENTURES IN MIDDLE-EARTH™

## LONELY MOUNTAIN™ REGION GUIDE

Visit the city of Dale and discover the wonders of the Kingdom Under the Mountain and the lands beyond with this essential guide for the world's greatest fantasy setting.

# - CREDITS -

**Written by** Gabriel Garcia, Andrew Kenrick, Mark A. Latham, T.S. Luikart,  
Francesco Nepitello, Jacob Rodgers, James M. Spahn and Kenneth Spencer.

**Producer:** Emmet Byrne

**Converted by** Jacob Rodgers

**Cover by** Ralph Horsley

**Art by** Jon Hodgson, Sam Manley, and Jan Pospíšil.

**Editors:** Emmet Byrne, Zak Dale-Clutterbuck, Andrew Kenrick, Francesco Nepitello and Síne Quinn

**Graphic Design and Layout:** Paul Bourne

**Proofreading:** Jacob Rodgers

**Special Thanks to** David Rea

**Publisher:** Dominic McDowall

Based on *The One Ring Roleplaying Game* by Francesco Nepitello and Marco Maggi

© Sophisticated Games Ltd 2019    © Cubicle 7 Entertainment Ltd 2019

To find out more about *Adventures in Middle-earth*, and  
to subscribe to our newsletter, please go to: [www.cubicle7.co.uk](http://www.cubicle7.co.uk)

Product Identity: The following items are hereby identified as Product Identity, as defined in the Open Game License version 1.0a, Section 1(e), and are not Open Content: All trademarks, registered trade-marks, proper names (characters, place names, etc.), new rules, classes, items, virtues, backgrounds, places, characters, artwork, sidebars, and trade dress. Open Game Content: The Open content in this book includes material taken from the Systems Reference Document. No other portion of this work may be reproduced in any form without permission.

Published by Sophisticated Games Ltd, 3 Andersen Court, Newnham Road, Cambridge CB3 9EZ, UK and  
Cubicle 7 Entertainment Ltd, Suite D3, Unit 4, Gemini House, Hargreaves Road, Groundwell Industrial Estate,  
Swindon, SN25 5AZ, UK



The Lonely Mountain, Middle-earth, The Hobbit, The Lord of the Rings, and the characters, items, events and places therein are trademarks or registered trademarks of The Saul Zaentz Company d/b/a Middle-earth Enterprises and are used under license by Sophisticated Games Ltd and their respective licensees. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publishers.

Printed in Lithuania

# - contents -

<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>DALE</b>	<b>35</b>	Meeting a Dragon	97
How to use the Lonely Mountain		A History of Dale	35	Rumours of Dragons	97
Region Guide	4	The First Founding	35	Dragons of the Third Age	99
The Passing of Years	4	The Coming of the Dragon	36	The Forest Dragon	99
		The Death of Smaug and The Rise of		Kibiluzn	100
		King Bard	36	Lytegan	102
<b>THE KINGDOM UNDER THE MOUNTAIN</b>	<b>5</b>	The City of Dale	37	Raenar	104
A History of Erebor	6	Dale Map	39		
The Founding of Erebor	6	The Gates of Dale	40	<b>THE WAR OF THE DWARVES AND ORCS</b>	<b>106</b>
The Desertion of Erebor	6	The Merchants Way	40	The Eve of War	106
The Second Kingdom and the Founding of Dale	7	The Quays	40	The Mustering of the Host	107
The Reign of Smaug	7	The Merchants Quarter	41	The War of Vengeance	108
The Bitter Years	7	Ravensgate District	44	The Battle of Azanulbizar	111
The Quest for Erebor and the Battle of Five Armies	8	Royal Palace	45	Aftermath	111
The Restoration of Erebor	8	Royal Barracks	47	Treasures of the War of Vengeance	112
Erebor	9	Residential Quarter	48	Wondrous Artefacts	112
The Last Home of the Dwarves	9	The Water House	49	Legendary Weapons and Armour	112
Erebor Map	10	Old Quarter	49	Dwarven Grudges	112
The Upper Halls	11	Notable Characters	51		
The Lower Halls	15	Things to do while in Dale	54	<b>EXPLORING THE RESTORED KINGDOMS</b>	<b>114</b>
The Deeps	17	New Fellowship Phase		Urban Journeys	114
The Mountain's Sides	17	Undertakings	54	Journey Event Table Entry 1	115
Notable Characters	18	<b>THE LANDS ABOUT THE MOUNTAIN</b>	<b>56</b>	Journey Event Table Entry 2	116
The Surviving Members of Thorin's Company	21	The Northern Dalelands	56	Journey Event Table Entry 3	117
Things to do while in Erebor	27	The Waste	60	Journey Event Table Entry 4	118
Staying in Erebor	27	The Grey Mountains	65	Journey Event Table Entry 5	119
New Fellowship Phase		The Upper Marches	69	Journey Event Table Entry 6	120
Undertakings	28	The Long Marshes	73	Journey Event Table Entry 7	121
		The Nether Marches	76	Journey Event Table Entry 8	122
				Journey Event Table Entry 9	123
<b>TREASURE OF THE DWARVES</b>	<b>29</b>	<b>CONCERNING DRAGONS</b>	<b>81</b>	Journey Event Table Entry 10	124
Dwarven Craftsmanship	29	The Great Worms	81	Journey Event Table Entry 11	125
New Enchanted Qualities	30	Hatching a Dragon	82	Journey Event Table Entry 12	126
Famous Dwarven Weapons and Armour	31	Step 1: Choose Age and Breed	83		
Dwarven Smithing	33	Step 2: Define Personality	85	<b>FOLK OF STONE</b>	<b>128</b>
New Fellowship Phase Undertaking:		Step 3: Choose Actions and Features	86	Dwarves of the Iron Hills	129
Dwarven-Smithing	33	Step 4: Lair and Hoard	91	Dwarves of the Grey Mountains	132
Extended Example of Dwarven-smithing	34	Step 5. Choose a Name and Backstory	95	Pre-generated Character Sheets	135
		Hunting Dragons	96		
		Treasures to Slay a Dragon	96	Index	139

## - INTRODUCTION -

For many centuries, the lands about the Lonely Mountain were part of the Desolation of Smaug, abandoned by all who feared the Dragon. But since Bard the Bowman slew Smaug, the kingdoms of Erebor and Dale – their fates entwined – are resurgent, their cities rebuilt, their fortunes revived. In the North, there are no greater wonders than Erebor and Dale.

The *Lonely Mountain Region Guide* takes *Adventures in Middle-earth* east of Mirkwood, to the Kingdom under the Mountain and the Kingdom of Dale. As well as describing both the cities of Erebor and Dale, it also details one of the most terrible foes a hero might hope never to face: Dragons.

The first section, **The Kingdom under the Mountain**, describes Erebor, its denizens and the wonders that might be found there. The second section, **Treasure of the Dwarves**, details the artifices of Durin's folk, fabled items crafted with skills now lost to the world. The third section describes the city of **Dale**, foremost sanctuary of Men in Wilderland, followed by the regions that surround the Mountain, from the Grey Mountains in the north to the Nether Marches in the south-east. Each region contains descriptions of major features and the wildlife that will typically be seen in the area, along with brief accounts of whatever inhabitants dwell there.

The next section, **Concerning Dragons**, describes the Great Worms, kin to Smaug and forever a bane upon Durin's folk. As well as providing ample background and rules for Dragons, it also describes what might be found within a Dragon's hoard, and presents four fully-hatched worms. **The War of the Dwarves and Orcs** presents a history of the long war between Azog and King Thráin, as well as outlining several ways that a Loremaster might bring its dark legacy to the fore in their own game. The seventh section, **Exploring the Restored Kingdoms**, provides journey tables customised to the areas around the Lonely Mountain. It also provides advice on adding colour to an urban outing by using the Journey Event tables in a new way. **Folk of Stone**, the last section, presents an expanded version of the Dwarves of the Iron Hills culture and a new culture: the Dwarves of the Grey Mountains.

## HOW TO USE THE LONELY MOUNTAIN REGION GUIDE

This supplement is a guide to the places and peoples of this part of Middle-earth, and is an invaluable source of new gaming material that expands upon what has been presented in *Adventures in Middle-earth*. It is intended primarily for the Loremaster, who can use this material to greatly enhance an ongoing campaign. Players – especially those playing Dwarven or Barding heroes – may be allowed to read some of this guide, but others should generally refrain from doing so. The companion volume to the *Lonely Mountain Region Guide* is entitled *Erebor Adventures*. This supplement contains six adventures that see the kingdoms of Dale and Erebor beset by dangers from within and without. Many of the Loremaster characters and locations featured in this guide play key roles in these adventures. You don't need *Erebor Adventures* to use the *Lonely Mountain Region Guide*, but *Erebor Adventures* relies upon the information in this supplement.

## THE PASSING OF YEARS

The material presented in the *Lonely Mountain Region Guide* assumes the year is contemporary with the default starting date for *Adventures in Middle-earth* – 2946 of the Third Age. Smaug has been dead for five years and Dale and Erebor have been rebuilt, but much work still continues. For Loremasters who wish to set their games later, perhaps to use alongside the material in the *Mirkwood Campaign*, they can do so with little modification.



# the kingdom under the - mountain -

It seemed as if darkness flowed out like a vapour from the hole in the mountain-side, and deep darkness in which nothing could be seen lay before their eyes, a yawning mouth leading in and down.

Erebor is the last great stronghold of the House of Durin. Built deep within the Lonely Mountain, it is more than just a city, or a mining complex, or a fortress: it is a palace of gems and marble, a mansion of emerald and iron, a redoubt of diamond and steel. Great streams of gold run through the living rock of its foundations and the columns of its halls are dense as the trees of a forest.

The Lonely Mountain dominates the north-east of Wilderland, standing guard over the Dalelands like a great

sentinel, a solitary peak rising between Mirkwood and the Iron Hills. Shaped like a star, with six ridges extending outwards from a central peak, this snow-capped mountain has been the site of bitter struggle, bloodshed, and much toil for many centuries. Other Dwarven holds have risen and fallen, Erebor alone has been reclaimed and rebuilt anew; not once, but twice. Its long history has become legend among the Dwarves, much of its lore has been lost in Dragon-fire; many secrets and dark mysteries may yet lie within the depths of the Mountain, waiting to be rediscovered.

When Smaug finally fell from the skies above Esgaroth, Erebor was once again free, but there weren't many among those who first entered its befouled halls who dared dream of restoring them to their former glory. It took all Dáin Ironfoot's will and energy to transform the blasted peak back into one of the wonders of the North. The old trade routes leading to the Mountain are being reopened; the Men of Dale and Lake-town prosper once more; and peace reigns between Durin's folk and the Elves of Mirkwood. In just a handful of years, the Dwarves have restored the upper levels of their stronghold, while

## The Folk of Durin

The Dwarves keep themselves apart from the rest of the Free Peoples and what few of their tales they share with outsiders are strange and sometimes contradictory. Even the Elves know little of them, saving only that they believe the fire of Aulë the Smith burns within all Dwarves, driving them to create cunning things with their hands.

It is held by the Dwarves that their race is divided into seven folks, each one descending from a founding father. Durin was the eldest among the Seven Fathers and the first to awaken in Middle-earth. The kings of his House, known in the Common Tongue as the 'Longbeards', have always been regarded with a special reverence by all Dwarves.

Durin made his home under the Misty Mountains, in the halls of Khazad-dûm, and the Longbeards dwelt there, building and delving the great city of the Dwarrowdelf.

Durin lived an exceedingly long life, even as the Dwarves measure age, so long that he was called 'the Deathless'. Yet he eventually passed away and was buried with great honour in Khazad-dûm.

According to the lore of the Longbeards, there seems to be an additional meaning to Durin's fame as the Deathless. For they say that his family line survived the passage of the centuries unbroken, and that five times an heir has been born in the House of the Longbeards who was so alike to his forefather in appearance and manner that he inherited the name of Durin. To this day, many Dwarves hold that this was Durin reborn.

King Dáin of Erebor, the King under the Mountain, is a direct descendant of Durin and the majority of the Dwarves of Erebor are Longbeards, or have permanently aligned themselves with that House, and are collectively known as "Durin's folk".

reopening many of the lower passages and tunnels that were blocked by the Dragon. Yet in recent years it seems that a shadow may again fall over the Lonely Mountain. Even from within their fortified mountain-halls, the Dwarves hear tell of a growing darkness. Doubt festers among those who feast in the well-lit halls of Erebor, as fell creatures gather in the wilds and, they say, smoke rises from Mount Doom far to the south.

## A HISTORY OF EREBOR

It is recorded that Dwarves have inhabited the Lonely Mountain since it was first colonised by Thráin the First in the year 1999 of the Third Age. Though it appears that the days of peace may have returned, the history of Erebor is one fraught with conflict.

### THE FOUNDING OF EREBOR (1999-2210)

The Dwarves of Erebor were originally from Khazad-dûm, the greatest Dwarf-hold of Middle-earth. However, in the year 1980 of the Third Age, the Dwarves dug too deeply for mithril beneath their mountain home, and unearthed a terror of the ancient world in the depths beneath the city. King Durin, the sixth to bear that name, was slain. The following year his son, Náin, was killed too and the Dwarves abandoned Khazad-dûm soon after.

Darkness and terror filled the halls of Khazad-dûm and it soon bore a new name: Moria, the Black Pit. The Dwarves scattered across Wilderland, seeking new homes. Some followed their new king, Thráin the First, beyond Mirkwood, until at last they settled around the year 1999 in an old mining colony under the Lonely Mountain.

Beneath the Mountain Thráin and his followers delved, finding great riches. The foundations of a new Dwarven mansion were soon laid. King Thráin and his followers laboured incessantly, for they sought to restore the honour of their folk, building a city that was worthy of any of the realms of the Dwarves of old. Their hopes and resolve were rewarded when among the deepest roots of the Lonely Mountain they discovered what would become the greatest treasure of Durin's folk: the Arkenstone, the Heart of the Mountain. Blessing their good fortune, the Dwarves set about their task with redoubled strength and all was well, for a time.

### Durin's Bane

The Dwarves do not know what befell Moria, nor indeed, do any of the Wise. The inhabitants of Khazad-dûm know only that an unseen terror struck at them, something that came up out of the mines. They refer to it as "Durin's Bane" as, whatever it was, it killed their King.

Today, many years after the fall, some Dwarves of Erebor believe that the time has come at last to reclaim the halls of Khazad-dûm. But King Dáin once peered into the Black Pit and fears that it would take more than the strength of the Dwarves to free Moria from the evil that now dwells there.

### THE DESERTION OF EREBOR (2210-2589)

Ten years into the reign of Thorin the First, son of Thráin the Old, the King resolved to remove the royal house of Durin's folk from Erebor to abide in the Grey Mountains. At the time, those peaks were mostly unexplored and their vast riches unexploited, and many Longbeards had already begun gathering there. Collecting his treasures, including the Arkenstone, Thorin and most of the denizens of Erebor left their city and moved to a new mansion. At the time, this decision was celebrated, for too long the Longbeards had been divided, yet it was to prove an ill-fated choice.

The Dwarves prospered in the Grey Mountains for many years, accumulating a great wealth, while Erebor lay unfinished and almost deserted, inhabited only by a few hardy miners. But late in the reign of Náin the Second, a plague of Dragons began to afflict the Dwarves. Those Great Worms dwelt and multiplied in the cold wastes beyond the mountains to the north, and in the year 2570 they began attacking the Dwarves without warning and in greater numbers as time went on.

In the following years, the Dwarves lost many mansions to the greed of Dragons; King Dáin the First himself and his second son Frór were slain before the gates of their own hall by the great Cold-drake, Raenar. Soon after, the Dwarves fled the Grey Mountains. The newly crowned



King Thrór and his followers returned to Erebor, while his younger brother, Grór and some of their folk, went with the King's blessing to the Iron Hills in the east.

### THE SECOND KINGDOM AND THE FOUNDING OF DALE (2590-2770)

The Dwarves of Erebor thrived under Thrór's rulership; the Arkenstone returned to the Great Hall of Thráin in the deep vaults and their treasure stores soon replenished. Great works were begun beneath the Mountain, as the Dwarves mined and tunnelled and made wider halls and many workshops.

The wealth and generosity of the King under the Mountain gained him the friendship of the Northmen living along the River Running; the Dwarves traded them beautiful things, shining weapons and sturdy mail, mainly in exchange for food-supplies. Soon, the town of Dale arose at the foot of the Lonely Mountain, with both peoples greatly profiting by their commerce (see page 35 for the history of Dale). Peace and prosperity reigned for many years, until one fateful day a great shadow flew over the mountain...

### THE REIGN OF SMAUG (2770-2941)

What possessed the great Dragon Smaug to leave the Grey Mountains and fly south is not known. Perhaps he bore the Dwarves some ill-will that had festered for centuries since the war fought by his kin against the folk of Durin; perhaps he had simply learned of the scale of the Dwarves' wealth beneath Erebor, and was driven by gold-lust as many Dragons are. Whatever the reason, Smaug the Golden, the greatest fire-breathing Dragon of his age, swept down upon the Lonely Mountain like a hurricane. He set the woods about the mountain ablaze, then slaughtered the Dwarves as they came forth from the Front Gate to meet their foe. His fiery breath turned the River Running to steam and, striking from amidst the clouds, he slew the warriors of Dale, including their lord, Girion. Returning to the Mountain, Smaug crawled in through the open gate and left no Dwarf he found alive.

A few of of Durin's folk managed to escape the Dragon's onslaught, including Thrór and his son Thráin, both of whom managed to flee by means of a secret door. Smaug set about sealing the passages of the Mountain, save for the Front Gate, which alone was large enough to allow him access. He gathered the treasures of Erebor into a

vast pile within the Great Hall of Thráin, which became his bed. In the years that followed, Smaug drove forth the people of Dale, and ravaged the countryside surrounding the Lonely Mountain for many miles. The region soon became known as 'the Desolation of Smaug' and all who valued their lives avoided it.

### THE BITTER YEARS (2770-2941)

Thrór, along with many other Dwarves in exile, set up home far to the south, in Dunland, where they scratched out a meagre living. Bitter and despairing, Thrór passed the last great treasure he possessed, one of the Seven Rings of the Dwarves, to his son Thráin. Then taking leave of his kin, journeyed to the gates of Khazad-dûm. In that darkened hall, Thrór was slain by Orcs, and the name of Moria's new king was branded in Dwarven runes upon his brow: Azog. Thráin and his sons, Thorin the Second and Frerin, consumed by rage and grief, called all Dwarves to a great war of vengeance against the Orcs and Goblins that infested the Misty Mountains. The War of the Dwarves and the Orcs is described elsewhere (see page 106), but suffice it to say that more than half of the Dwarf-host perished in the final battle in the valley of Azanulbizar; but vengeance was theirs, for Azog was slain, and the Orcs and Goblins were crushed for long years afterwards.

After the war, the Dwarves dared not enter Moria and reclaim their lost realm. Instead, they chose exile again and dispersed. Thráin and Thorin, now called the Oakenshield, for defending himself with a stout branch when his shield failed him at Azanulbizar, wandered west with their people into Eriador, eventually repairing north to a modest mansion along the eastern edge of the Blue Mountains. Long years of hard labour followed, and the folk in exile prospered in small measure, slowly increasing their wealth and numbers.

At last, in the year 2845, Thráin left the Blue Mountains with a small party, including the brothers Balin and Dwalin. Travelling east, a hard rain drove them to camp under the eaves of Mirkwood. In the morning, Thráin was gone, never to be seen again by his kin. Unbeknownst to the Dwarves, the Dark Lord Sauron's emissaries captured the King of Durin's folk. Thráin was dragged to the fortress of Dol Guldur. There, the Dwarf-lord was tortured and Sauron reclaimed the last of the seven Dwarf-rings, before leaving him in the dungeons to rot. Several years later,

while searching the abandoned fortress, Gandalf the Grey came upon a dying Thráin, who was so weak and crazed that he could not even remember his own name. Thráin gave Gandalf his last two possessions: the key to Erebor and the map to the Lonely Mountain, and died shortly thereafter. Gandalf left the Dwarf without learning his identity, an ignominious end for a king.

### THE QUEST FOR EREBOR AND THE BATTLE OF FIVE ARMIES (2941)

Many years later, Gandalf encountered Thorin Oakenshield in Bree, seemingly by chance. There, Gandalf realised the Dwarf he had encountered in Dol Guldur must have been Thráin, and in Thorin, he saw a way to remove the Dragon from the Lonely Mountain and restore the Dwarves to Erebor. Together, the Grey Wizard and the Dwarf-lord crafted a plan to retake the Lonely Mountain.

Thorin and Company crossed Wilderland through many dangers, but managed to reach the Back Door to Erebor on Durin's Day of the year 2941. The Hobbit Bilbo Baggins stole into the Mountain, where he discovered that the diamond waistcoat of Smaug the Golden was not without flaw. As Smaug destroyed Lake-town, he was slain by Bard the Bowman, descendant of Girion. The Lonely Mountain was freed from the Dragon.

After Smaug's death, Thorin's Company claimed the treasure as theirs by birthright, and declared Thorin King

under the Mountain. However, Bard and Thranduil, the Elvenking of Mirkwood, each demanded a portion of the treasure as reimbursement for the damage that Smaug had inflicted upon their ancestral homes and people; Thorin, seized by Dragon-sickness, refused them. Thorin's cousin, Dáin Ironfoot, arrived at the Mountain from the Iron Hills with his own forces, summoned by Roac the Raven. Bolstered by Dáin's presence, Thorin declared his intention to go to war with the Elves of Mirkwood and the Men of Esgaroth, who began to gather in great numbers outside the Lonely Mountain, set on besieging the Dwarves.

All might have gone differently indeed, if not for a sudden attack by an army of Orcs and other foul creatures led by Bolg, son of Azog. Realising their common foe, the Free Peoples stood together against them in the Battle of Five Armies. Though the army of Elves, Men, Dwarves and, at the last, Eagles, was victorious, Thorin received a mortal wound, and his nephews Fili and Kili died defending him. With his dying words, Thorin renounced his own selfishness and greed, parting from Bilbo Baggins in friendship. Thorin was entombed beneath the Lonely Mountain, the Arkenstone given into his keeping, and the ancient sword Orcrist placed upon his breast.

### THE RESTORATION OF EREBOR (2941-PRESENT)

With the death of Thorin, it was left to his cousin Dáin Ironfoot to take up the mantle of King under the Mountain. King Dáin became an ally and, soon, a friend of Bard the





Dragon-slayer, now acclaimed as the new lord of Dale. Together, the two set about building their kingdoms. Dáin sent word to all the scattered exiles of Durin's folk that Erebor was theirs once more and, slowly, the Longbeards began to return to the Lonely Mountain.

As more and more Dwarves flocked to the Kingdom under the Mountain, the great rebuilding began. To this day countless new chambers have been excavated, old tunnels reopened, treasure reclaimed, statues repaired or carved anew, and the halls have slowly been restored to their former glory. The work continues still, with new halls being opened and new expansion projects planned yearly. Though much has been renewed, King Dáin ordered the Great Hall of Thráin cleared of all wealth, cleansed of the Dragon's reek, and then left empty, for Smaug slept there far too long and whispers of his dark dreams still remain. Vacant, silent and still the Great Hall of Thráin lies now, a reminder of all that was lost, even as Erebor rises strong and secure once more.

## EREBOR

Between the two southerly spurs of the Lonely Mountain lies a dark cavernous opening, from which the thundering waters of the River Running surge. On either side of that cleft, stand massive pillars of ornately engraved stone, each one carved out of the living rock of the Mountain itself. The mouth of the cavern is not just a hole in the cliff-wall, but a mighty arch, formed from huge blocks of carefully placed marble. Some of the stones here are pristine; others have been scorched by fires so hot that they partially melted. Beneath the arch is a set of massive wooden gates braced with dark metal, opening to a wide passageway paved with stones so well-laid, that a slip of parchment cannot be placed into the seams between them.

Dwarven warriors stand before the gates clad in shining mail; firm and resolute, with hard eyes and searching looks for all that wish to enter the realm of Dáin, King under the Mountain, stronghold of Durin's folk, the Kingdom of Erebor.

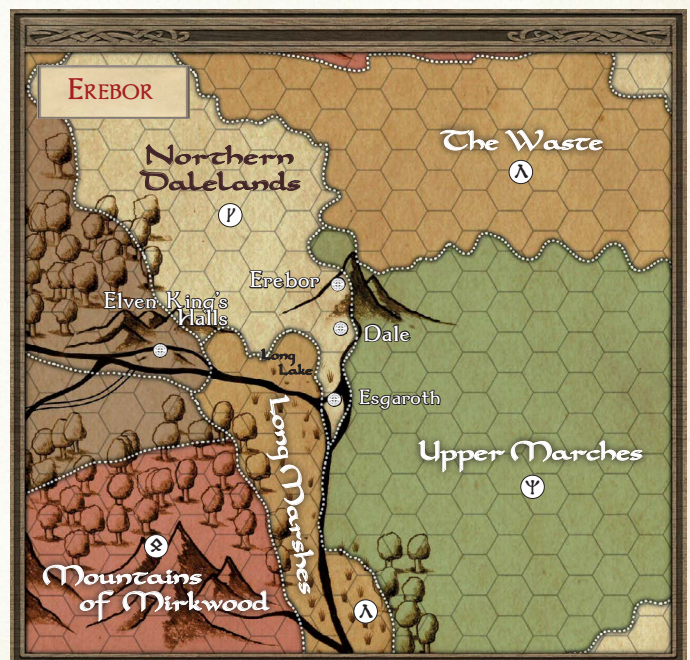
**Combat scenery:** dead silence, great heat (in the forges, same effects as freezing cold), low ceilings, narrow walls, pits, rock edges, rock pillars, thick smoke, varied slopes

## THE LAST HOME OF THE DWARVES

A visitor entering Erebor through the Front Gate for the first time will be awe-struck by the sight within. What lies beyond its monumental threshold is no cold, gloomy mine, but a royal mansion, spread across many levels and lit by huge lanterns, innumerable torches and sunlight from reflecting mirrors. It is a vast kingdom filled with halls and chambers, workshops and treasuries, and crossed by underground streets, tunnels, alleys and squares, stretching for many miles into the depths of the Mountain.

At first it is hard to believe that Erebor is an underground hold, although the lack of blue skies above and the scent of earth on the air may at long last prove stifling to those who favour the sight of distant mountains and open meadows. For a Dwarf, however, even one who has never before set foot inside Erebor, the subterranean city feels like home. The tough bones of the Lonely Mountain under their feet, the heat and smoke of the furnace, the smiting of hammers on countless anvils, and the scrape of tools against rock; everything conspires to make even the most itinerant Dwarf want to set down roots.

The most important city of the Dwarves of Durin's folk in the Third Age is divided into the Upper Halls, the Lower Halls, the Deeps and the buildings rising on the Mountain's Sides.



## Erebor - The Lonely Mountain

- 1 - The Front Gate
- 2 - The Great Chamber of Thrór
- 3 - The Great Hall of Thráin
- 4 - The Back Door
- 5 - The Chamber of Mazarbul under Erebor
- 6 - Tomb of Thorin Oakenshield
- 7 - The River Running
- 8 - Ravenhill
- 9 - Dale

## Entering the Lonely Mountain

Since the reclamation of Erebor, travel to the Lonely Mountain is relatively safe. Dale thrives once more, as does Lake-town, which was built wholly anew after Smaug's death. Entering the fortified mountain-city, however, is not such an easy task. Dwarves are often suspicious, and the dark days of Smaug have done nothing to ameliorate their spirit. Erebor is guarded ceaselessly, and ravens can be seen circling the skies above the Mountain and the surrounding region at any hour. The Front Gate is closed soon after nightfall, and a strong garrison surveys all who pass through it during the day. Those expecting a warm welcome from the Dwarves of the Lonely Mountain are in for a bitter surprise.

- Dwarves of any house not currently dwelling in the Lonely Mountain are welcome to visit Erebor, though if they wish to stay, or acquire a home or workshop, they must show what skills they have to offer their peers. A Proficiency Bonus of +4 or more is sufficiently impressive to grant them a place.
- Merchants and traders who show up at the Front Gate are invariably turned away and instead directed to the townships of Dale and Esgaroth, as is anyone seeking an apprenticeship with a Dwarf-smith. Only a handful of young Bardings are granted the privilege of entering Erebor on a regular

basis, as they are pupils coming to visit their masters thanks to special agreements, often tied to promises and favours tracing back to the days of the Battle of the Five Armies.

- Adventurers who wish to enter Erebor for the first time must be accompanied by someone who has already access to the Dwarven realm — either a Dwarf of Erebor or a patron who is respected in the Mountain (Gandalf or Beorn, for example). Otherwise, they will be refused admittance.
- Everyone else wishing to enter the Kingdom under the Mountain is stopped at the Gate and asked to give a reason for their visit. Wanderers moved by idle curiosity are not granted access, as is anyone not travelling to Erebor on an official errand from some friend of the Dwarves.
- Companions who have the King under the Mountain as a patron may send word to him at the gate and ask for permission to enter.

Normally, when someone is granted admittance they are not allowed to go beyond the Upper Halls of Erebor. Anyone caught trespassing will be imprisoned.

### THE UPPER HALLS

The locales found in the upper levels of Erebor are for the most part the largest and most impressive. They were built to instil fear and reverence into the hearts of those who crossed the threshold of the Kingdom under the Mountain. But as with a floating mountain of ice, the Upper Halls are just a small part of the great realm of the Dwarves.

### The Front Gate

The Front Gate stands as a great monument to the power and skill of the Dwarves. It is a tall arch, wide enough to allow the march of many Dwarves abreast, cut from the formidable rock of the mountainside. A large, high bridge

leads to it, and from the roadway a traveller can look out right across the River Running, down into the valley where Dale rises, and beyond to the south.

The sheer scale of the Front Gate, while providing an intimidating bulwark for many centuries, contributed to the downfall of Erebor in 2770. As the only portal wide enough to grant him ingress, Smaug the Golden assaulted the Front Gate and used it to enter the Dwarf-citadel, reducing the wondrous underground kingdom to ruin. Smaug eventually sealed all other gates into Erebor that he could find, the better to protect his ill-gotten hoard.

Upon Dáin's coronation, the King decreed that every Dwarf leaving the Kingdom under the Mountain on business should return one year hence, bringing marble suitable for building, as tribute to the kingdom. As an exemplary gesture, Dáin brought a huge block of red porphyry from his own home in the Iron Hills, and used it as the Front Gate's new lintel. Even though Dáin's order has since been lifted, entering the Front Gate bringing a small piece of marble is considered a token of respect and two large piles of these "marble offerings" now lie on either side of the hall immediately past the gate.

All who pass through the Gate of Erebor do so under the watchful eyes of the guards under the orders of Dwalin, one of the renowned members of Thorin's Company. A vast system of pulleys and wheels allows the mighty doors to be opened and closed with great speed. Beyond the gate, the Main Road of Erebor plunges into the depths of the Mountain.

### The 'Stone Guard'

The warriors that keep guard over the Gate and streets of Erebor are stout Dwarves, old veterans of many wars. They all have seen some two hundred winters or more, and are on indefinite leave from their King, free to mind their families and personal businesses. It is entirely of their own will that they have taken up the duty of keeping a watch over their underground home, under the nominal lead of Dwalin, their eldest. Equipped with their most

trusted gear, mended mail coats and notched axes and shields, they are affectionately referred to as the 'Stone Guard', as opposed to the famed Iron Guard of the King under the Mountain.

### STONE GUARD *Medium Dwarf*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
16 (+3)	11 (+0)	15 (+2)	10 (+0)	13 (+1)	11 (+0)

**Armour Class** 16 (Ring-mail, Shield)

**Hit Points** 32 (5d8+10)

**Speed** 25 ft

**Skills** Investigation +2, Perception +3

**Senses** passive Perception 13, night vision

**Languages** Khuzdûl, Westron

**Challenge** 1 (200 XP)

**Baruk Khazâd!** If the Stone Guard's attack reduces his target to 0 hit points, he may use his bonus action to move up to half of his speed and make another attack against a different target.

**Old Hatred.** When the Stone Guard is fighting Orc-kind with a melee weapon, he can re-roll his weapon's damage die and use either total.

#### Actions

**Axe.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +5 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 7 (1d8+3) slashing damage or 8 (1d10+3) slashing damage if used with two hands.



## The River Running

A rushing stream, the source of the River Running, flows alongside the passage that runs through the Front Gate. Its boiling waters are funnelled into a narrow channel that splits into two arms at the Gate, letting the river descend beneath the bridge outside in two falls before flowing in a wide loop around Dale and back to the southern spur.

The river then flows towards the Long Lake, where the Men of Lake-town ply their trade, starting the long course that will bring its waters across Rhovanion and thence east to the Sea of Rhûn, past the land of Dorwinion. Even after the arrival of the Dragon at the Lonely Mountain and the exile of the Dwarves, the River Running remained an important trading route for the Elves of Mirkwood, the old town of Esgaroth and many of the lands to the south.

Now, the great bridge to the Front Gate is restored, and the waterfalls that feed the River Running cascade from the

Mountain, forming a natural defence for the Dwarf hold and a means of hauling heavy trade goods to the docks of Dale. The river has once more become the lifeblood of prosperity in the region.

## The Great Chamber of Thrór

The Great Chamber of Thrór is the seat of the King under the Mountain. Lying a short distance from the Main Road leading to the Front Gate, the pulsating heart of Erebor is a wide feast-hall, hewn from a large, natural cave, but decorated with such skill that each corner of it is filled with sculptures and graven runes providing the finest examples of Dwarven stone-craft.

It is here that Dwarves and emissaries come to pledge their allegiance to the King, while great gatherings are held on feast days, to eat and drink, sing and cheer. At other times, the King holds his council within the hall. Then, both entrances to the Great Chamber are set under heavy guard until the council's business is complete.

## The King's Council

The King under the Mountain rules over a fractious folk, a congregation of many different clans that have not been subject to a crown for many centuries. For every clan there are a dozen chieftains, and many ill-tempered warriors, and even more smiths and miners used to carrying out their duties following the instructions of no one but themselves. But Durin's folk are once again united, and everyone must learn to work together if the kingdom is to be preserved.

With this goal in mind, the King regularly calls for a council to deal with any problem or concern affecting Erebor as a whole. While Dáin ultimately decides what will be done, those summoned to attend are called to offer the King useful advice on the matter at hand, from the smelting of ore, to the miners' troubles and to the brewing of good beer.

The council's greatest worth lies in helping to mediate the disagreements between the various divisions of Dwarves working under the Mountain. All the major

groups within Erebor are asked to send representatives: the miners, the smiths and the merchants all send several members, representing different factions within those groups. Many important and influential Dwarf advisors are also called to appear at the council, including various members of Thorin's Company.

The full council meets rarely, as there are few issues that require everyone to be present and even on such occasions, many of its members prefer to be about their work, and will often send apprentices to speak for them. On the rare occasions that the King has desired to see the full council, Dáin has had to send members of the Iron Guard to roust some of them from their workshops.

Companions who bring grave or important news to the attention of the Lonely Mountain may be summoned before the council to discuss what they have learned. Indeed, a Dwarf of high standing and Wisdom may be asked to sit upon the council.

When the great restoration works began, the King made it a point of honour not only to bring the hall back to its former glory, but to surpass it. The chamber's high roof echoes once more to the sound of the King's speeches, the songs of his warriors and the cheers of the Dwarves. The seat of the King under the Mountain dominates the hall, set against the great Cup of Thrór, a huge golden chalice that is one of the most valuable treasures in the hold.

The hall is accessed by large, gold-chased doors of foot-thick oak at the front and rear. The front doors lead to the Main Road that runs through the Front Gate. The back doors behind the Cup of Thrór lead down to a long series of stairs and passages, and thence to the Great Hall of Thráin, which was where the Arkenstone was once kept.

Off to the side of the hall lie a series of functional rooms: a council room for the most secret meetings or private audiences with the King; a vast kitchen and adjoining pantry in which feasts are prepared; a guardroom and armoury; and the King's private library, from which few but the King himself know that a secret passage leads out to the eastern slopes of the Mountain.

### The Iron Guard

*The dwarves are exceedingly strong for their height, but most of these were strong even for dwarves. In battle they wielded heavy two-handed mattocks... their beards were forked and plaited and thrust into their belts... and their faces were grim.*

The King's personal bodyguard is composed of tough Dwarves of the Iron Hills, and new recruits continue to be drawn from the finest warriors from Dáin's former home. Many among those of superior rank are close kin to the King, cousins and nephews of different degrees of lineage.

Every visitor admitted to the Chamber of Thrór is subject to their stern gaze, seen glowering from behind their grim iron face-masks, wrought to be hideous to behold. The King's bodyguards are known as the 'Iron Guard', a testament not only to their homeland, but also to their will and courage, even if some would say that their monicker betrays that their loyalty is not to the Kingdom under the Mountain, but to its current king: Dáin, the Ironfoot.

### IRON GUARD *Medium Dwarf*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
17 (+3)	12 (+1)	19 (+4)	11 (+0)	14 (+2)	8 (-1)

**Armour Class** 14 (Ring-mail)

**Hit Points** 59 (7d8+28)

**Speed** 25 ft

**Skills** Insight +4, Perception +4

**Senses** passive Perception 14, night vision

**Languages** Khuzdûl, Westron

**Challenge** 2 (450 XP)

**Khazâd ai-mënu!** If the Iron Guard's attack misses, he may use his bonus action to make another attack against the same target.

**Warrior's Charge.** The Iron Guard has Advantage on all attacks made in the first round of combat.

#### Actions

**Mattock.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +5 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 10 (2d6+3) piercing damage.



## THE LOWER HALLS

It might be said that the true home of Durin's folk lies in the Lower Halls of Erebor. Here, the extension of the excavations is astounding, and the number of rooms, chambers and halls is beyond measure. The life of the Dwarves of the Mountain thrives in the depths, away from the light of the sun and the prying eyes of strangers.

### Stángard

Stángard, meaning "Stone Enclosure" or "Stone Court" in the tongue of the Northmen, is the main residential district of Erebor. It can be compared to a wide township, consisting of many homes, shops, drinking halls and counting-houses. Six wide, winding stairways stretch out from a central square, one for each spur of the Mountain, each one leading to a different part of Stángard. The stairways are numbered, the First Stair being the one leading to the part of the city lying below the Southern Spur of the Lonely Mountain, the one pointing in the direction of lost Khazad-dûm (despite its name, the ridge is oriented to the south-west).

The great part of the Dwarves of Erebor live in Stángard, and from here they descend daily into the chambers and shafts known as "The Deeps" to mine for ore and gems; others head into the many workshops and furnaces of the Mountain to craft the wondrous jewellery, weapons and armour for which Erebor is justly famed.

When not going about their business, which can be rare in Durin's folk, for they have a tendency to bury themselves in their crafts, many Dwarves spend their time in the square in the centre of Stángard. Here is where food-supplies are bought and drink can always be found, for the Dwarves work the mines and foundries of Erebor in great ongoing shifts throughout the day and night, resulting in hungry and thirsty miners and smiths coming off work at nearly every hour. Dwarven voices raised in song continually ring out of lively drinking halls here, to be stilled only rarely by a tale well told.

Except for fellow Dwarves, few visitors ever walk the carven streets of Stángard, or see the rare Dwarf-children run between the square's stalls and shops, or hear the tinkling of small tools as delicate jewellery is crafted by the Folk of Durin as a pleasant way to pass the time.

## The Great Hall of Thráin

This vast chamber was once Erebor's main hall for feasting and celebration, and also where the finest of the Mountain's treasures was kept safe: the Arkenstone. That was before the coming of Smaug, who chose to make this his lair, lying on his bed of gold and gems amongst the bodies of the dead. The Great Hall is no longer filled with the riches of Erebor; they have all been moved to smaller, safer vaults and the hall cleansed as best the Dwarves can. The Great Hall often lies empty now, a dark place deemed unwholesome still by King Dáin, used mainly as a passageway between other halls.

The Great Hall of Thráin can be accessed down many long stairs and winding passages from the Great Chamber of Thrór, and also from the secret Back Door in the side of the Mountain. Other passages lead away from the Great Hall to artisan workshops, vaults filled with treasure, and the Chamber of Mazarbul under Erebor. The side-chambers of the Great Hall have also been cleared, and it is here, in silent repose, that Thorin Oakenshield's tomb lies.

## The Forges

The "Forges" are a general reference that Durin's folk make to the many smithies, workshops and furnaces spread among the depths of the Lonely Mountain. There are forges of various kinds on every level of the Lower Halls. Those of the deeper levels tend to be furnaces where precious metals, iron, and steel are smelted and worked. The forges nearest to Stángard's residential district are often the workshops of jewellers, engravers and stone-cutters. In the higher levels of the Lower Halls reside the laboratories of toy-makers and those rare Dwarves who pursue some of the more esoteric of their crafts, such as the carving of certain special runes and the writing of moon-letters.

## The Smiths of Erebor

The countless workshops of the Lower Halls ring day and night with the sound of smiths' hammers and the tinkling of small tools scraping over stone. Though the metalwork of Erebor's smiths is not as majestic as their forefathers', they still make armour and weapons that are the envy of the best smiths of Men. In stonework though, their skills may yet surpass those of their ancestors. While the Folk of Durin are completely loyal to King Dáin, they still guard the secrets of their respective crafts quite carefully.

### EREBOR SMITH *Medium Dwarf*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
15 (+2)	13 (+1)	12 (+1)	16 (+3)	12 (+1)	8 (-1)

**Armour Class** 12 (Shop Leathers)

**Hit Points** 16 (3d8+3)

**Speed** 25 ft

**Skills** History +5, Smith's Tools +5

**Senses** passive Perception 11, night vision

**Languages** Khuzdûl, Westron

**Challenge** 1/4 (50 XP)

**Secret Craft (1/day).** The Smith can use his bonus action to gain Advantage on one ability check (including tools).

**Stiff Necks.** If one or more Smiths are present for an Audience and the speaker for the Company is not a Dwarf, the Introduction Check is made with Disadvantage.

#### Actions

**Hammer.** *Melee or Thrown Weapon Attack:* +4 to hit, reach 5 ft or range 20/60 ft, one target. *Hit:* 4 (1d4+2) bludgeoning damage.

### The Back Door

In a hidden, steep-walled bay, nestled between the two westernmost spurs of the Lonely Mountain, a disused path can be found. The path is an overgrown trail of rough-hewn steps that winds its way up the mountainside, to a narrow, grassy ledge. This ledge is known only to a few as "the Doorstep", for it marks the location of a secret door, once known only to the line of the Dwarf-kings of Erebor.

From the outside, the Back Door has been cunningly concealed to blend into the natural rock face; all but impossible to find, and even harder to open except with the Key to Erebor. From the inside, however, it can be opened more readily – if not easily.

Despite the door's weight, it swings silently, and the passageway beyond is smooth sided and smooth-floored, gently descending eventually to the Great Hall of Thráin. It is likely, then, that the original intent of the door was a secret escape route for the King under the Mountain in the event of a siege, whereupon he, his family and his guards could leave Erebor undetected, with the greatest of their treasures in tow.

### The Chamber of Mazarbul under Erebor

Beyond the Great Hall of Thráin, protected by a sturdy stone door, lies a wide rectangular hall. This chamber holds the great library and records of the Dwarves of Erebor. Ignored by Smaug (for he could smell no gold here) the hall holds books, stone tablets, ledgers, scrolls, and annals stretching back to well before the foundations of the Lonely Mountain. The chamber's dry air serves as an excellent preservative for the paper here and many of the centuries-old books appear as if they were recently written. Dwarves are always on the lookout for ancient manuscripts of their folk to bring to this hall, and would pay handsomely any adventurer who would return from the ruins of a fallen mansion of the Dwarves with any sort of document. Little by little, Munin, the Keeper of Records, is adding to the collection with great care and reverence, hoping that the time will come when the chamber will be the greatest repository of knowledge in the North.



### The Tomb of Thorin Oakenshield

Though Thorin succeeded in liberating Erebor from Smaug's clutches, he fell in the Battle of Five Armies. The returning Dwarves constructed a great tomb for their fallen hero, set in an ante-room accessed through the Great Hall of Thráin. Here, Bard the Bowman and Thranduil of the Elves visited the fallen Thorin to pay their last respects. Bard placed the Arkenstone upon Thorin's breast, where it lies still. Thranduil placed Orcrist at Thorin's side, where it will emit a brilliant glow if Erebor is ever again endangered by Orcs and their foul kin.



## The Arkenstone of Thráin

"That stone of all the treasure I name unto myself, and I will be avenged on anyone who finds it and withholds it."

Found in the deep mines of Erebor in the earliest days of the Dwarf-hold's founding, this pale jewel – known as "the Heart of the Mountain" – is the greatest treasure ever unearthed by the Dwarves. The skill of the Dwarf-smiths transformed the already beautiful stone into a fist-sized orb, with a thousand flawless facets; it shines with an inner luminescence, but when the merest sliver of outer light falls upon it, it gleams like water in the sunlight, shot through with the colours of the rainbow.

In the centuries after its discovery, the Arkenstone became an heirloom of the Kings of Durin's folk. Thráin's son, Thorin, carried it away into the Grey Mountains where it remained until King Thrór brought it back to the Great Hall of Thráin. When the Dragon Smaug sacked Erebor, the Arkenstone was thought lost, lying among Smaug's treasure trove in the bottommost cellar until Bilbo Baggins discovered it and gave it to Bard. After the Battle of Five Armies, enmity was set aside between the leaders of the Dwarves, Elves and Men, and Bard of Dale placed the Heart of the Mountain in Thorin's tomb. Nearly a thousand years after its discovery, the Arkenstone is buried once more beneath the Lonely Mountain.

- The Arkenstone is a Wondrous Artefact with a Greater Blessing of Intimidation (See the  *Loremaster's Guide*, page 127).

## THE DEEPS

As they had with Khazad-dûm before it, when the Dwarves first colonised Erebor they began delving deep into the caverns under the Mountain. There, the Dwarves found gold and precious stones in abundance, and over the centuries the scale of the mines grew along with their fame. Yet, the Dwarves that delved here did so with memories of Moria

and have exercised greater caution in how deep they are willing to go. The mines are organised into many 'deeps', which range from simple shafts, where the Dwarves work for ore and gemstones, to large vaults, storerooms, cellars and workshops. In some deeps, great smelters work day and night, producing ingots for the forge halls high above. Other deeps produce coins of silver and gold.

The heart of the deeps is a huge central shaft, filled with great spans of stone stretching between various dig sites. Mines of every shape, size and type are bored out from this shaft, though many are presently filled in or collapsed. Since the restoration of the hold, only a fraction of the old mines have resumed operation, but even so it is an impressive venture.

Some of the closed shafts are still marked with ancient warning runes. They lead to far older caverns that were blocked in the time of Thorin the First, possibly to protect Durin's folk from terrors burrowing in the depths. None still live who can remember what, if anything, lies down those dark tunnels, but some whisper of unquiet spirits and scuttling monsters, and about the earth itself opening up to gobble down trespassers. Sentries patrol the bridges of the central shaft and the disused tunnels regularly, lest something hideous stir beneath the earth and catch Erebor unaware.

## THE MOUNTAIN'S SIDES

While the delver mines in the depths of Erebor, the mason builds atop its summit. The Dwarves have started a number of construction endeavours upon the sides of the Lonely Mountain that will keep them busy for decades to come and that will surely make the house of the folk of Durin one of the wonders of the North.

## Thráin's Towers

The most ambitious of all of the projects of the Dwarves of Erebor has been under way since the refounding of the realm. The foundations of six identical watchtowers have been laid in the living stone of the stony ridges that make up the Lonely Mountain, and unprecedented fundings are being set aside for their construction. For their purpose will not simply be that of giving the dwellers of the Lonely Mountain a warning should enemies approach their fastness, but to give them a weapon against their direst of enemies: the Dragons.

King Dáin's objective is to create a chamber inside each tower capable of capturing the winds, in the manner of those built of old by the Dwarves of the Grey Mountains. Under the right combination of air currents, these "Chambers of Winds" were known to resonate mightily, creating a thunderous dirge capable of deafening and keeping away the Worms of the North.

But the secrets of their construction seem to escape the grasp of the most cunning engineers of Durin's folk; complex calculations are being made in great secret every day, and countless drafts for the structure of Thráin's Towers have been drawn and discarded. Maybe some specification about the materials to be used has been lost, or maybe magic was employed and no trace of its use survived in the records? With each passing day, King Dáin considers with more attention the counsel of those who suggest that an expedition be organised to go and find an intact "Chamber of the Winds", to examine... (Loremasters should see *Wilderland Adventures*, page 139.)

### The Ice Terrace

High upon the southern slope of the Lonely Mountain, a mere bowshot down from the heights where the snow does not melt, the first of many planned terraces has been carved out of the mountainside. The Ice Terrace overlooks much of Wilderland. Looking down from its lofty position, one can easily see Dale far below, Lake-town to the south, and the dark reaches of Mirkwood stretching out to the south and west. Yet the terrace was not built for peering down, but for gazing up. The Ice Terrace is both Erebor's observatory, used for charting the course of stars and the moon, and its most unusual workshop. A large portion of the terrace holds an enclosed laboratory with a clear crystal ceiling. Here, moon-letters are engraved, and the lights of the night sky are sometimes caught by master stonemasons in cunningly wrought gems.

### Ravenhill

An outlying height at the extremity of Erebor's great southern spur, Ravenhill is the site of a large guard tower directly overlooking the River Running and the city of Dale.

The height takes its name from the long-lived ravens that roost above the watchpost's chambers. At the time of the destruction of Erebor, the chief of these magnificent birds was Carc, known by the Dwarves to be exceptionally

wise and, like many of his kind, capable of speech. When Thorin returned to the Lonely Mountain 171 years later, Carc was dead, but the ravens remained, led by his son, the ancient and balding Roäc (see page 20).

The ravens of the hill have always been loyal allies of the Dwarves, relaying messages and secret tidings for Durin's folk in exchange for gold and trinkets to scatter about their mountainside nests. Those Dwarf warriors who man the guard-post today are chosen from amongst the bird-friends of Erebor, so as to maintain good terms with the ancient ravens who provide the Kingdom under the Mountain with far-ranging spies.

Dwarf companions who have befriended a Raven of the Mountain will always find a warm welcome here, and can find out much that has been learnt by the winged denizens of Ravenhill.

### NOTABLE CHARACTERS

Since the refounding of the Kingdom under the Mountain, Erebor has become home to a host of mighty and revered lords of the Dwarves. To rub shoulders with such heroes is a singular honour extended to few, and their very presence in the Lonely Mountain brings renown to the hold.

#### Dáin Ironfoot, King under the Mountain

**There now Dáin son of Náin took up his abode, and he became King under the Mountain, and in time many other Dwarves gathered to his throne in the ancient halls.**

Dáin Ironfoot, son of Náin and cousin to Thorin, is now King under the Mountain. Once lord of the Iron Hills, he has ruled over Erebor since the death of his cousin Thorin Oakenshield following the Battle of Five Armies. He has overseen an unprecedented period of peace and prosperity for the Dwarves of the Lonely Mountain.

King Dáin is stern and proud, known throughout the land as a strong ruler. He has forged peace not only with the Men of Lake-town but also the Elves of Mirkwood, and he became famed for his generosity. By replenishing the long-dwindled wealth of Durin's folk and brokering alliances with his neighbours, Dáin has assured Erebor's position as the mightiest stronghold in the North. He does, however, remain suspicious of his new allies; he has a deep mistrust of Elves, and while he trusts Bard, he is

wary of the weakness of Men as far as the temptations of the Shadow are concerned.

Dáin came to prominence as a mere stripling during the War of the Dwarves and Orcs, and he joined the fray in the battle at Azanulbizar. Azog, the great Orc, killed his father at the east entrance of Moria. The young Dáin, filled with rage, raced up the steps of the gate and slew Azog where he stood. Such a feat from one so young was seen as near-impossible, and that single act of martial prowess and courage turned the battle in the Dwarves' favour. However, when the Dwarves looked to their new lord for their orders, Dáin showed the sage judgement that he has carried into rulership ever since. He looked into the darkness of Moria, and knew that, even with the Orcs driven out, it was no longer a home for Dwarves. He led his people away from Khazad-dûm, never to return. Dáin Ironfoot maintains the proud traditions of a warrior-king; he keeps his friends close and his enemies closer, the crown placed upon his troubled brow, his war gear always ready.



### An Audience with Dáin

Dáin is almost two centuries old, but as any hale Dwarf lord, he is not so old that he can no longer swing an axe or instil respect in those around him. He is stout, even for a Dwarf, and it is clear to all who meet him that great strength still flows through his limbs. His plaited red hair and forked beard are streaked through with silver, and his wrinkled skin is tough and leathery. He looks every inch the warrior-born, and yet in conversation he is measured, insightful and quietly spoken. Even though he now has a mithril crown upon his head, he still wears the humble iron-shod shoes of a miner. Like all Dwarves he is direct, yet he is not without either patience or subtlety. Unlike some of his kind he is reluctant to cause offence and slow to anger – though there is no doubt that it would be unwise to raise his ire.

When not within his private quarters in the upper levels of the mountain, Dáin is most often found in the Great Chamber of Thrór, holding council or presiding over his official duties. Sometimes he reads alone late at night in the Chamber of Mazarbul, paces the bottommost cellar or stands for many hours beside Thorin's Tomb.

A hero may request an audience with the King under the Mountain, but Dáin is a stickler for formality and does not grant his time lightly. More likely, a hero will be summoned to Dáin's presence, coming to the King's attention due to some great deed, or given some task to complete to prove his allegiance to the Lonely Mountain.

A public audience, to pay tribute or swear fealty, is undertaken in the Great Chamber of Thrór, with the Dwarf council and the Iron Guard in attendance. If the hero has earned a private audience, however, he will be taken to the council-room or some other chamber while business is discussed.

**Motivation:** The weight of the Lonely Mountain is upon my shoulders, speak plainly how you may assist me. Otherwise, do not add to my burdens.

**Expectations:** +2 if the heroes observe all the long-winded customs of Dwarven audiences without stinting or grumbling; +1 if the heroes are forthright without being rude; -2 if the Company expects Dáin to provide a solution to them or express a lack of patience.

## Dáin as a Patron

It is not easy to win the confidence of a Dwarf, let alone one who has seen as much battle and toil as Dáin Ironfoot. It is harder still to mislead, flatter or trick him, for his steely eyes seem to penetrate the very heart of all who linger in his presence. For those he trusts, and those who are honest, Dáin is a warm host and shrewd advisor, but he has many demands on his time — a sure way to fall out of his favour is to bother him repeatedly with trivialities. Companies that have King Dáin as a Patron may come and go from Erebor as they like, though they are expected to act with proper decorum at all times.

### DÁIN IRONFOOT

*Medium Dwarf*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
19 (+4)	10 (+0)	17 (+3)	13 (+1)	17 (+3)	12 (+1)

**Armour Class** 19 (magical Dwarf-wrought Hauberk)

**Hit Points** 105 (14d8+42)

**Speed** 25 ft

**Skills** Insight +6, Perception +6, Traditions +4

**Damage Resistances:** piercing from non-magical attacks

**Senses** passive Perception 16, night vision

**Languages** Khuzdûl, Westron

**Challenge** 8 (3,900 XP)

**Baruk Khazâd!** If Dáin's attack reduces his target to 0 hit points, he may use his bonus action to move up to half of his speed and make another attack against a different target.

**Khazâd ai-mënu!** If Dáin's attack misses, he may use his bonus action to attack the same target again.

**Runes of Protection.** Dáin's armour provides resistance to non-magical piercing damage (noted above).

#### Actions

**Multiattack.** Dáin makes three attacks with his red axe.

**The Red Axe.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +10 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 13 (1d12+1d4+4) magical slashing damage (see page 112).

#### Reaction

**Great Might (Recharge 5-6).** Dáin may use his reaction when he takes damage from a melee or ranged weapon attack to reduce his damage taken by 4, to a minimum of 1 point of damage taken.

## Munin, Keeper of Records

A venerable Dwarf of many winters, Munin is the head archivist of the Chamber of Marzabul under Erebor. Lore of the elder days that exists nowhere else in the North, save perhaps the halls of Rivendell, lies within his charge. Companions with the support of King Dáin, or another noteworthy Dwarf, may be able to get his assistance in researching old records, as his memory remains quite sharp, though he is short with outsiders and any he considers to be wasting his time.

Munin has a long white beard that just touches the floor. Unfortunately, despite his amazing grasp of ancient lore, dealing with Munin can be trying; at his advanced age (well over 200) his hearing is failing, however, he refuses to accept this and abhors shouting as he believes it implies disrespect.

**Motivation:** There are no words in any tongue to relay how happy I am that Erebor was recovered when I feared it lost forever.

**Expectations:** +2 if the Company is able to bring new knowledge to Munin — many records of the old kingdom are still missing; -2 if they are 'shouting' — those talking with Munin have to raise their voices high enough to be heard, but not so high as to make him think he is being yelled at.

## Roäc the Raven

The chief of the great ravens of Ravenhill, Roäc is ancient even for one of his kind. When Thorin and company came to Erebor for vengeance upon Smaug, Roäc was already more than 150 years old, and marked by age.

It was Roäc who flew to Thorin's Company with news that Smaug had been slain by Bard the Bowman, and who sent his ravens to Dáin of the Iron Hills with word to bring reinforcements to protect the treasure of Erebor.

The son of Carc, said by the Dwarves to be the greatest lord of the ravens ever to have lived, Roäc has inherited much of his noble father's wisdom. He rightly warned Thorin that the treasure that had brought him to Erebor would be his death, and even now is a trusted ally and counsellor to the Dwarves. Roäc is now so ancient that he rarely leaves his mountainside nest, but his ravens range

far and see all – there is no movement within the north of Wilderland that Roäc does not know of.

**Motivation:** Of highest importance is the safety of the Mountain.

**Expectations:** +1 if the Company announces that they will abide by Roäc's advice – he's used to stubborn Dwarves and pleased that his wisdom does not fall on deaf ears. -2 if they do not treat him as an equal – despite his great age his knowledge is vast.

### THE SURVIVING MEMBERS OF THORIN'S COMPANY

The Dwarves who joined the Quest for Erebor have all become justifiably renowned among their folk. Indeed, the Bardings of Dale and the folk of Lake-town sing the names and deeds of the companions of the Oakenshield. While they did not receive a fourteenth share of Smaug's treasure, they are all quite wealthy and many of them serve the Kingdom under the Mountain in one way or another.

Customisation notes are provided below but most of the members of the company can be readily represented by the Dwarf-Lord entry on page 78 of the Loremaster's Guide.

#### Glóin the Emissary

The skill of most Dwarves, it is said, lies in their hands, whether they are wielding tools or weapons. While Glóin is a veteran of a great many battles, and can swing an axe with the best of them, his tongue is his truest tool and weapon. Since the Battle of Five Armies, Glóin has swiftly become one of the most favoured of Dáin's envoys. He is trusted to advance the interests of the Lonely Mountain in such a way as to make Erebor's position clear, while not unduly upsetting allies. A trying position, but Glóin does it with grace, even on the rare occasions when he has to deal with Wood Elves, who he regards poorly.

Glóin serves as the Kingdom under the Mountain's main ambassador to Esgaroth. He has a well-appointed mansion in Lake-town where he spends several weeks a year, working on a wide variety of trade issues with the Men of the Lake. His valiant son Gimli regularly accompanies him on his journeys on Erebor's behalf.

Glóin is exceedingly well-spoken and generally kindly to all (save Wood Elves). Glóin favours white garments, or brightly coloured ones trimmed with white, matching the colour of his forked beard.



**Motivation:** I am a representative of King Dáin and I will bear myself accordingly, no matter the situation.

**Expectations:** +1 if the Company expressing willingness to compromise – Glóin knows that diplomacy is built on both parties giving up a little; -2 if they have a Elf of Mirkwood as their speaker – Glóin has never forgotten his rough treatment at their hands.

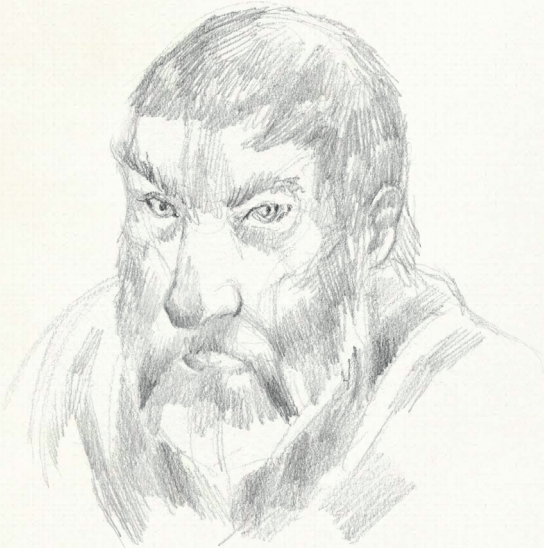
**Customisation:** Add **Persuasion** +5 to the Dwarf-Lord's list of skills to represent Glóin. In battle he wields the Axe Under the Mountain (Superior Fell, Gleam of Terror).

#### Óin the Healer

Óin is Glóin's older brother. The two have little in common, save their knack for building fires and their love for one another. Where Glóin is subtle, Óin is blunt. Where Glóin can make even the most unpleasant news easier to hear, Óin is brutally, painfully honest. Far more belligerent than his younger brother, Óin remains a fierce warrior but a skilled healer. His expertise with herbs, potions and salves is profound, almost rivalling that of the Elves of Rivendell.

Like his brother, Óin too, has become an emissary for Dain, but Óin is typically sent on longer journeys to folk who prefer action to fair speech. Óin has a sharp sense of

humour, though he skewers himself as readily as others he meets on the road. Óin keeps his beard short, a habit he developed after a particularly unpleasant encounter with spiders in Mirkwood. He favours brown garments, the better to go unnoticed in the Wild.



**Motivation:** Are you friend or foe? Do you oppose the King under the Mountain? Answer quickly, for you have an impatient Dwarf in your face!

**Expectations:** +1 if the heroes answer directly without bluster; +2 if they are willing to laugh at themselves

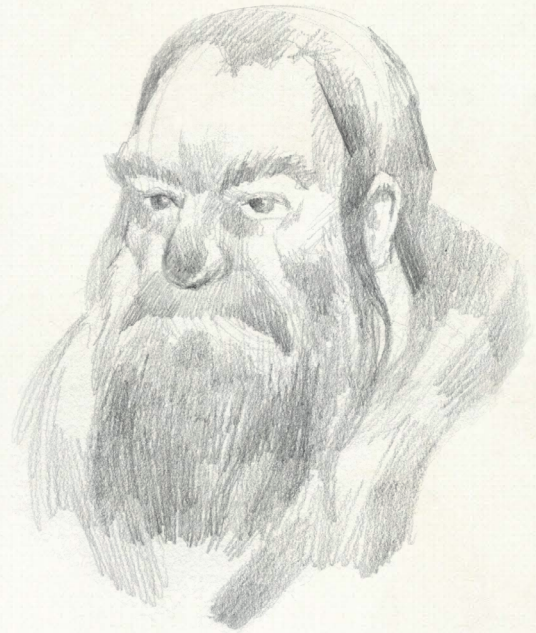
**Customisation:** Add **Medicine** +5 to the Dwarf-Lord to represent Ori's skill with herbs.

### Bifur the Trader

Bifur is the son of a smith from the Iron Hills and a far-travelled Dwarf, who has seen much of the North and the West. After the Battle of Five Armies, Bifur took on a position as one of Dáin's emissaries to Erebor's trading partners. He now spends much of his time travelling between Ironthorpe, near the Iron Hills, and the Lonely Mountain, ensuring that the regular shipments of ore that move along the road between the two don't go 'astray'.

Bifur is a sturdy middle-aged Dwarf with silver streaking his black beard. He carries an elaborately carved walking cane bound with strands of Mithril, a family heirloom, though his mattock is often near to hand as well. Bifur

occasionally needs the help of adventurous sorts to guard especially valuable shipments or look into unusual matters he has heard about on the road. Bifur tends to speak in quick bursts of words, saying several things at once in rapid succession, before falling silent for an uncomfortably long amount of time afterwards.



**Motivation:** I am looking for trustworthy sorts who are willing to brave the Wild on behalf of the King.

**Expectations:** +2 if the Company are well-worn – Bifur cares little for fancy clothes or exquisite manners; -1 if they're shy about money matters – he expects to pay for good service, though not too much, of course.

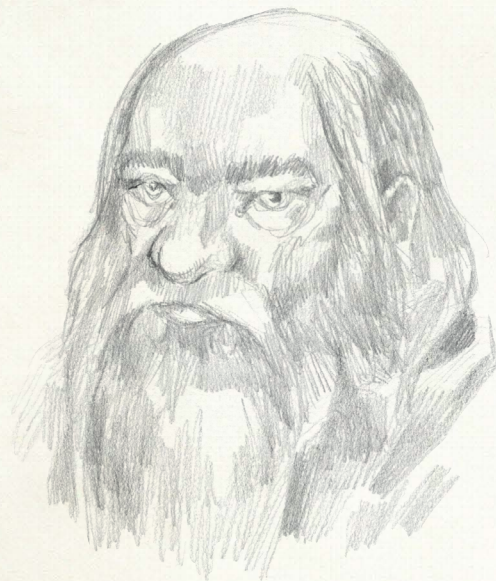
**Customisation:** Add "**Walking Songs**. If the companions travel with Bifur, once upon the journey they can make a **DC 10 Charisma (Performance)** check. If successful, the hero gains Inspiration." to the Dwarf-Lord entry.

### Bofur the Miner

Bifur's cousin and Bombur's brother, Bofur was raised in the hard environs of the Blue Mountains. A miner and occasional explorer, Bofur developed a real thirst for adventure during his travels with Thorin's Company. Favouring his mattock in battle, Bofur proved himself a skilled warrior, time and again fighting fearlessly to protect his king.

Nowadays, Bofur is most often to be found overseeing the excavation of the old deeps, where he takes charge of any expeditions into newly opened tunnels. There are few Dwarves who know the tunnels and mines as well as Bofur, and his prestige among Durin's folk has only increased in the dark tunnels beneath the Lonely Mountain.

Bofur is a hardy soul, as like as not to start a rousing song when excavating and one of the first to throw himself into danger if accidents occur or trouble arises. Bofur's son, Bofri, is an emissary to the Woodmen of Mirkwood, where he endeavours to follow in his father's footsteps by leading an expedition to reopen the Old Forest Road (see *Rhovanion Region Guide*, page 93).



**Motivation:** Do you fear the dark? Not enough, I'd warrant.

**Expectations:** +1 if the Company has fought extensively against Orc-kind; -2 if there are no Dwarves among them – Bofur knows that many do not rest easy when there's half a mile of solid stone above their heads.

**Customisation:** Add both **History +5** and **Performance +5** to the Dwarf-Lord to represent Bofur's interests.

### Bombur the Fat

Bofur's brother and Bifur's cousin, Bombur's immense size and voracious appetite caused frequent problems on the Quest for Erebor, but his culinary skills and uncanny ability

to sniff out provisions in the unlikeliest of environments along with his jolly nature made his presence essential to the morale of the party. Bombur is a well-known and beloved figure in both Dale and Erebor, a frequent guest in the dining halls and kitchens of both kingdoms. Since the Battle of Five Armies, he has dedicated himself to ensuring that good food is readily available in the North and has quietly backed several spice merchants and taverns.

Bombur's garrulous nature and friendly demeanour aid him in his true duty: spying. Bombur hears all the gossip of both Dale and Erebor, along with a great many secrets. He filters what he has heard for truth and regularly passes what he suspects along to his fellows on the King's Council. Bombur is always looking for new and "interesting" folks who can help him stay "in the know" on any important matters in Wilderland. He prefers to swap one choice bit of news for another, but he will readily pay real coin for valuable information.

Bombur is a rotund Dwarf, with an explosive laugh as big as his belly. Despite his love of eating, he keeps his large yellow-hued beard fastidiously clean. He expects most folks to underestimate him, assuming he is a foolish glutton and little more – he greatly values those that can see him clearly.



**Motivation:** Come drink up and be merry! Tell me again whatever news you have, for I seem to have forgotten it.

**Expectations:** +1 if the heroes go along with Bombur's antics – he really does enjoy culinary delights and new tastes; -2 if they're suspicious of him or interfere with his true mission.

### BOMBUR *Medium Dwarf*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
15 (+2)	8 (-1)	14 (+2)	17 (+3)	18 (+4)	16 (+3)

**Armour Class** 14 (Ring-mail)

**Hit Points** 65 (10d8+20)

**Speed** 25 ft

**Skills** Deception +7, Insight +8, Perception +8, Performance +7

**Senses** passive Perception 20, night vision

**Languages** Khuzdûl, Westron

**Challenge** 3 (700 XP)

**Expertise.** Bombur doubles his Proficiency Bonus for certain skills, noted above.

**Riddling Words.** If Bombur spends 10 minutes with a creature, it must succeed at a **DC 14 Wisdom** saving throw or become Charmed until Bombur gives the creature a reason to doubt his sincerity or it takes a long rest.

**Sneak Attack.** Once per turn, Bombur deals an extra 3 (1d6) damage when he hits a target with a weapon attack and has Advantage on the attack roll, or the target is within 5 feet of an ally and he doesn't have Disadvantage on the attack roll.

#### Actions

**Short Sword.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 7 (1d6+4) magical piercing damage.

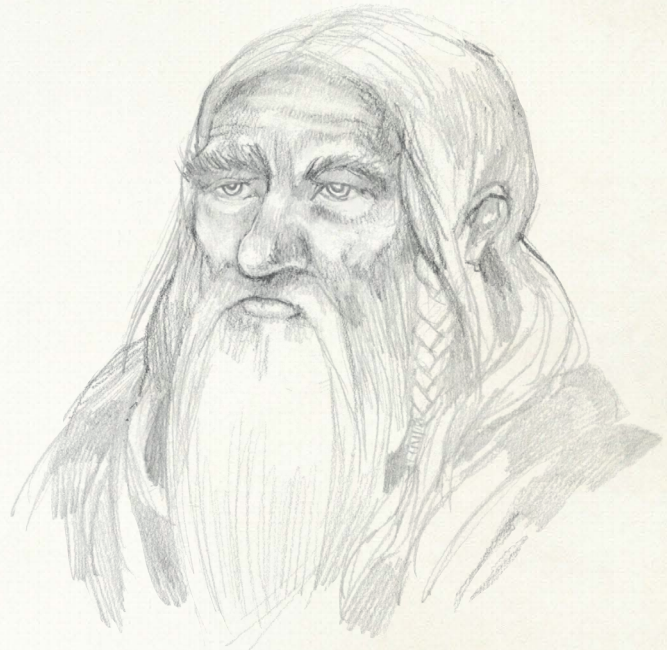
#### Reactions

**Uncanny Dodge.** If Bombur can see an attacker that has struck him, he may use his reaction to halve that attack's damage.

Dwarves on the Quest for Erebor, became the closest to Bilbo Baggins, a friendship he still treasures.

Balin presently sits on the King's Council and his advice is widely heeded. He often travels on the King's business, acting as an emissary for Dáin. In the course of his duties, he regularly speaks with traders in Dale and frequently talks with King Bard.

Balin is an ageing Dwarf with bright eyes, a long white beard and a dark-red cloak. He is always interested in news from afar and regularly speaks with travellers on his regular visits to Dale. Balin is somewhat disquieted about the state of the North, though he is hard pressed to put his finger on what troubles him. He buries his concerns in regular travel, while occasionally studying old records about Khazad-dûm and ruminating on the past accomplishments of his folk.



**Motivation:** What news of the North, friends? All of us who strive against the Enemy should not keep secrets from each other.

**Expectations:** +2 if the Company represents many folk – Balin has come to believe that the fate of the North is not just in the hands of the Dwarves; -1 if the Company speaks to him of secrets or accuses folk of treachery without extensive proof.

## Balin the Statesman

The elder son of Fundin, Balin was already a noted hero among the Dwarves when he accompanied Thorin on the Quest for Erebor. Balin is known for his deep wisdom, and the hard experience gained in many battles against the Orcs. He was Thorin's closest advisor and, of all the



**BALIN**  
*Medium Dwarf*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
16 (+3)	10 (+0)	16 (+3)	14 (+2)	19 (+4)	11 (+0)

**Armour Class** 17 (magical Silver Ring-mail)

**Hit Points** 82 (11d8+33)

**Speed** 25 ft

**Skills** Deception +3, Perception +10, Survival +7, Traditions +6

**Senses** passive Perception 20, night vision

**Languages** Khuzdûl, Westron

**Challenge** 6 (2,300 XP)

**Chinks in the Armour (Recharge 5-6).** Balin can use his bonus action to make a **Wisdom (Perception)** check against the AC of his target. If he succeeds, his first successful attack roll this round counts as a critical hit.

**Expert.** Balin doubles his Proficiency Bonus for Perception and Traditions (included above).

**Khazâd ai-mênu!** If Balin's attack misses, he may use his bonus action to make another attack against the same target.

**Old Hatred.** When Balin is fighting Orc-kind with a melee weapon, he can re-roll his weapon's damage die and use either total.

**Actions**

**Multiattack.** Balin makes three attacks with his great axe.

**Great Axe.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 9 (1d12+3) slashing damage.

**Reactions**

**Parry.** Balin adds +3 to his AC against one melee attack that would hit him. To do so, he must see the attacker and be wielding a melee weapon.

A hale Dwarf of late-middle age with a carefully plaited grey beard, Dori regularly travels between Erebor and Dale, with sporadic trips to Lake-town throughout the year. His dour expression seldom lightens, save when he explores the possibility of a swifter death than whatever doom he thinks is most likely eminent.

Despite his outward appearance, Dori is a good-hearted soul. He occasionally quietly arranges for "likely fellows" to help out folks in desperate need, paying them from his own pocket, though he absolutely insists that such arrangements be kept strictly confidential.



### Dori the Merchant

Noted as the strongest amongst Thorin's Company, Dori is a staunch warrior and accomplished musician. Unlike his brother Nori, Dori's pessimistic outlook and grumbling disposition make him ill-suited to the life of a toy-maker and he certainly doesn't share his brother Ori's love of books. Dori instead decided to establish himself as a merchant and, with his connections, he swiftly became one of the wealthiest and most successful traders of Erebor.

Due to his cautiousness and thoroughness, Dori is the Dwarf to know when it comes to matters of trade into or out of the Lonely Mountain.

**Motivation:** I always expect the worst, and plan accordingly.

**Expectations:** +1 if the Company brings bad news to Dori (thus proving him right, again); -3 if they attempt to cheer him up.

**Customisation:** Change the Dwarf-Lord's **Strength** to 20 (+5) and thus his attack roll to +10 and his damage to 12 (2d6+5).

## Dwalin the Warrior

Like his older brother Balin, Dwalin is renowned amongst the Dwarves, though his reputation is far darker than his brother's, for he is skilful and utterly ruthless in battle. Dwalin was perhaps Thorin Oakenshield's staunchest supporter in the Quest for Erebor, and even now he mistrusts Elves and Men, remembering Thranduil's dungeons and their eagerness to make war on the rightful King under the Mountain.

He is outspoken and fearless, even towards his king, and these qualities have earned him Dáin's respect and his adoption as the informal head of the Stone Guard.

Surprisingly tall for one of his race, Dwalin stands a head above most Dwarves and is half again as wide as many men. His beard is a dark-blue, and he thrusts the braided end through his belt, so as not to get in his way in battle. Dwalin is quick to take offence and slow to trust, but he never forgets his friends, along with his (many) foes.

### DWALIN Medium Dwarf

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
17 (+3)	10 (+0)	20 (+5)	11 (+0)	12 (+1)	14 (+2)

**Armour Class** 17 (Dwarf-wrought Hauberk)

**Hit Points** 104 (11d8+55)

**Speed** 25 ft

**Skills** Intimidation +5, Perception +4

**Senses** passive Perception 14, night vision

**Languages** Khuzdûl, Westron

**Challenge** 7 (2,900 XP)

**Leadership.** As a bonus action, Dwalin can command a nearby Dwarf other than himself to act. That Dwarf takes its turn immediately after Dwalin.

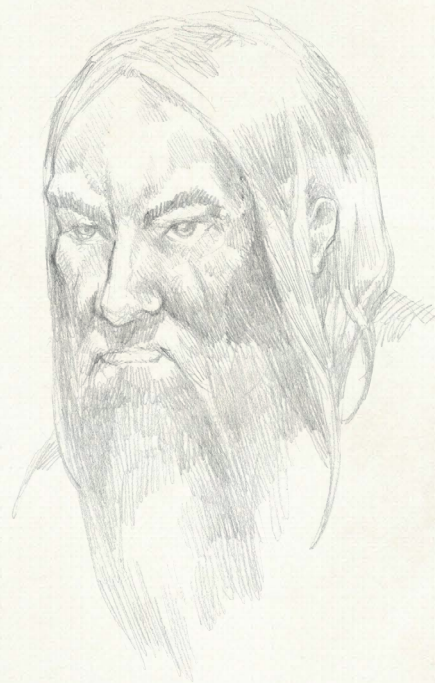
**Old Hatred.** When Dwalin is fighting Orc-kind with a melee weapon, he can re-roll his weapon's damage die and use either total.

**Unyielding (Recharge 5-6).** Dwalin can use his bonus action to gain 10 temporary hit points.

#### Actions

**Multiattack.** Dwalin makes three attacks with his great axe.

**Great Axe.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 9 (1d12+3) slashing damage



## Ori the Scribe

Ori is a scribe and artisan, more commonly found with a pen in hand than an axe or a stein of ale. Since the Battle of Five Armies, Ori has devoted himself to the studies of the lore of his people, collecting scrolls and tables from across Middle-earth in the hopes of recovering more of the Dwarves' lost treasures. He frequents the Chamber of Mazarbul under Erebor and has become a valued confidant of Munin, the Keeper of Records.

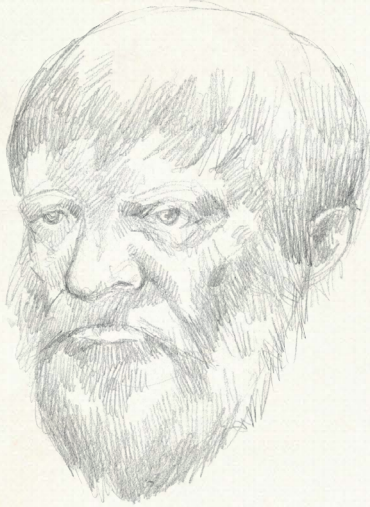
Ori is a slender Dwarf, with a modest brown beard and ink-stained hands. He is fairly bookish and somewhat reserved, though great passion arises within him when discussing the lost glories of the past and those that may yet be recovered.

Heroes who uncovered old artefacts of any sort, though especially Dwarven ones, will find that Ori can identify them and their potential properties as if he were a Loremaster (see page 23 of *Rivendell Region Guide*). Ori sometimes has uses for courageous adventurers willing to explore old ruins. He already has several expeditions into the Grey Mountains planned for the right company.

**Motivation:** If you seek glory and treasure, go elsewhere. I seek for that which was lost and knowledge is more than worth its weight in gold.

**Expectations:** +1 if the Company brings Ori any new lore or history; -4 if they seem only interested in weapons and armour – it is the scholar’s hope that the Enemy might be defeated by knowledge since he is unconquerable by force of arms.

**Customisation:** Add **History** +5 and **Lore** +5 to the Dwarf-Lord’s skills.



### Nori the Toy-maker

Hailing from the Blue Mountains, Nori joined Thorin on his quest to Erebor in part because he had fallen on the wrong side of the law and decided it was no longer wise to remain amongst his folk there. Nori joined his brothers Dori and Ori on the quest without asking too many questions, a decision that he sometimes came to regret. A spirited Dwarf, with a love of fine food and pipeweed that made him singularly appreciate the companionship of a Hobbit on the quest, Nori proved his worth many times over in the Wild.

Although he considered giving in to wanderlust after the Battle of Five Armies and leaving the Lonely Mountain with his share of the treasure, his brothers persuaded him to stay and try to make something of himself. To Nori’s great surprise, he found that he is a highly skilled toy-maker, though he loves the delight on children’s faces when they play with his creations far more than the work that goes into making them.

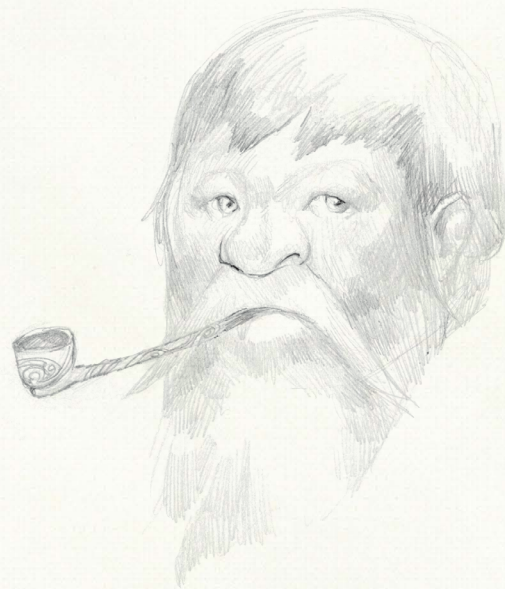
Nori is a stout Dwarf who is far quicker on his feet than most would believe from his girth. He favours purple hoods

and frequently smokes from a beautifully engraved long-stemmed pipe, with which he gestures when talking. Nori is a regular seller at the Toy-market of Dale every month, and many Barding children know him on sight. Many of his toys are quite clever, with secret compartments and hidden properties.

**Motivation:** I take delight in the joy of others and my past is like a rushing river – those times are beyond me now.

**Expectations:** +2 if the heroes share in Nori’s delight for clever workings and hidden things; -4 if they somehow remind him of his illicit past.

**Customisation:** Increase the Dwarf-Lord’s **Dexterity** to 17 (+3) and add **Sleight of Hand** +6 to his skills.



## THINGS TO DO WHILE IN EREBOR

Under King Dáin’s stewardship, Erebor has grown into a bustling centre of trade in Wilderland, and a haven for all Dwarves. Though it is a heavily fortified stronghold and a busy mine, it is also a thriving city, and there is much to see and do within, for those permitted to enter.

### STAYING IN EREBOR

Erebor is the greatest stronghold of Durin’s folk left in the world, but it is not necessarily always a “safe place”. There are treasures in Erebor that the Dragon caressed for long

years, cracks deep beneath the Lonely Mountain that lead to uncertain ends and caverns where traces of corruption still linger.

### Effects on Shadow

The treasures of Erebor are tempting for even the most pure-hearted of souls. Any companion with the Dragon-sickness Shadow Weakness who spends a Fellowship phase in Erebor must make a Corruption check (DC 15 **Wisdom** saving throw). Only if the hero rolls a natural 1 on the Corruption check do they gain a Shadow point.

Dwarven companions who choose the Heal Corruption undertaking while staying in Erebor may make up to two rolls and use any tool proficiency on the checks.

### NEW FELLOWSHIP PHASE UNDERTAKINGS

These undertakings can be chosen by companions spending a Fellowship phase in Erebor.

#### Visit Thorin's Tomb

**They buried Thorin deep beneath the Mountain, and Bard laid the Arkenstone upon his breast.**

Any hero visiting Erebor might wish to pay a tribute to Thorin Oakenshield, the fallen hero of the Battle of Five Armies. Many among those who live in Wilderland today owe their freedom to him, not only those belonging to the folk of Durin. But his last actions tell of a tormented soul consumed by the Dragon-sickness, who finally made peace with himself and his friends looking for, and finding, a heroic death. Visitors wishing to see Thorin's final resting place are led through the Great Hall of Thráin, where Smaug once dwelt on his bed of gold, and thence to the side-chamber that houses the Dwarf lord's magnificent tomb, adorned with the Arkenstone itself and the Elven blade of his sword Orcrist.

In the following Adventuring phase, you can spend Inspiration and remember Thorin's noble death. You recover a number of Hit Dice equal to half your Proficiency Bonus, rounded up.

#### Pay Homage to the Ravens of Ravenhill (Bardings and Dwarves Only)

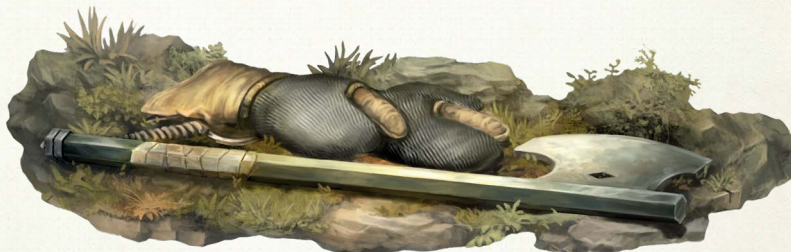
**"I knew many among the ravens of the rocks when I was a dwarf-lad."**

The ravens of the Lonely Mountain are a breed apart from normal birds of Middle-earth. Of great intelligence and longevity, the ravens have long held strong ties with the Dwarves, serving as messengers, spies and scouts. These great birds know much that happens throughout the North, if their trust can be gained.

Dwarven and Barding heroes spending a Fellowship phase in Erebor or Dale may choose this undertaking and spend some time with the birds of Ravenhill. By showing due deference to the magnificent birds there, they may gain the friendship of a raven, or, if they are Dwarves already possessing the *Ravens of the Mountains* Virtue, they may reinforce their existing bond.

Choosing this undertaking gains a hero the opportunity to summon a raven as per the *Ravens of the Mountain* Virtue (see *Player's Guide*, page 106) during the following Adventuring phase, and ask it to perform an errand. After it completes the errand, the raven will return home and not be available again, so select your request wisely.

Dwarves already possessing the *Ravens of the Mountains* Virtue may ask their raven friend to join the Company for the length of the following Adventuring phase instead. When the Dwarf companion is fighting, the raven may be sent to harass one foe, causing it to have Disadvantage on attack rolls for the duration of the battle.



# TREASURE OF - the DWARVES -

On silver necklaces they strung  
The flowering stars, on crowns they hung  
The Dragon-fire, in twisted wire  
They meshed the light of moon and sun.

The Dwarves toil ceaselessly to bring forth wonders from their halls of stone, yet with each passing age they and their works have diminished. The Dwarves have always believed that crafting knowledge should be held close, to be revealed only when earned by a worthy apprentice. Thus, with every master who dies without passing down their secrets, another bit of lore is lost forever.

Over the ages the Dwarves have lost many master craftsmen. The destruction that heralded the end of the First Age drowned the great Dwarven cities of Belegost and Nogrod, slaying many. What few survivors there were fled to Khazad-dûm, but then they delved too deep and that ancient home of the Dwarves was abandoned too.

A few centuries later, the Dragons of the Withered Heath descended upon the Dwarf-holds of the Grey Mountains bringing ruin, but none so much as Smaug the Golden when he burnt Erebor. Finally, apprentices and masters beyond count died at the Battle of Azanulbizar, the knowledge they held irreplaceable.

But not all is lost. In the Twilight Years of the Third Age, the Dwarves can still forge good armour and keen swords – even though the ancient secrets of metalwork that they once knew have been forgotten. And in dark places under the earth much treasure waits to be discovered by those who dare brave the darkness.

## DWARVEN CRAFTSMANSHIP

The  *Loremaster's Guide*  contains rules for creating magical treasure, specifically Legendary Weapons and Armour, which is further expanded in the  *Rivendell Region Guide* . Following those rules, when the Loremaster

endeavours to create an ancient sword or suit of armour of extraordinary quality for the players to find, the origin of its craftsmanship must first be determined (see page 133 of the  *Loremaster's Guide* ).

If the item is to be of Dwarven craftsmanship, then the Loremaster may add an additional level of detail, choosing exactly from which Dwarven mansion the artefact came from, picking one among  *Nogrod* ,  *Belegost* ,  *Khazad-dûm*  or  *Erebor* .

### Nogrod and Belegost

In the First Age, Nogrod and Belegost were magnificent Dwarf-holds, dug under the peaks of Ered Luin. They were destroyed when Beleriand was broken, and their folk scattered in exile. But the work devised by the Dwarves in their forges still lies in ancient hoards, or in the hands of great heroes.

Legends hold that the smiths of Belegost first devised the making of mail of linked rings, and that their cunning handiwork produced hauberks that were both beautiful and impervious to fire, and masked helmets wrought in hideous shapes to daunt their foes. But in the forging of arms none among the craftsmen of Dwarf-kind surpassed those of Nogrod, and no one was more renowned than Telchar, the maker of Narsil, the sword of Elendil the Tall.

- In game terms, mail armour and headpieces from Belegost should have a full complement of three Enchanted Qualities, including the new Quality  *Fireproof* . Moreover, headpieces forged in Belegost can have the  *Gleam of Terror*  Quality (normally attributed only to close combat weapons, see page 136 of the  *Loremaster's Guide* ).
- Likewise, weapons forged in Nogrod should have three Qualities, including the new Quality  *Fierce* .

### Khazad-dûm

It was in Khazad-dûm that many skilled Dwarves found refuge after the ruin of Beleriand. There the folk of Durin discovered true-silver, the precious metal that the Elves call Mithril. Stronger than tempered steel, but amazingly light and easy to work with, the bright silver metal allowed the smiths of Khazad-dûm to create true works of wonder.

- Legendary Weapons and Armour from Khazad-dûm should have at least two Qualities, and can have a third Quality. Only two Qualities at maximum can be Ancient or Superior (e.g. Ancient Cunning Make, Superior Fell, etc.).

### Khazad-dûm and Eregion

During the Second Age, the Dwarves of Khazad dûm became great friends with the Elves of Eregion. Such a friendship between those two peoples had never existed before and has not since. No small number of Khazad-dûm's great works incorporated the skills of both the Dwarves and the Elves.

An item crafted in Khazad-dûm may incorporate the benefits coming from both Dwarven and Elven craftsmanship.

For example, a weapon could be a Bane for Orcs with the Enchanted Quality *Luminescence*, yet also burn with the Dwarven *Flame of Hope*.

Finally, a number of Legendary Weapons and Armour forged in Khazad-dûm may also have a Blessing, a quality normally found only in Wondrous Artefacts. In such a case, a single Blessing counts as an Enchanted Quality. Such items generally have one of the following Blessings: Athletics, Intimidation, Perception or Stealth.

### Erebor

Before the coming of the Dragon, the Dwarves of the Lonely Mountain still excelled at making sharp blades and sturdy mail, but their cunning was not comparable to that possessed by their forefathers in the First or Second Age. This notwithstanding, their wealth was known and envied throughout Middle-earth... which may have been what brought Smaug's wrath upon them.

- Legendary Weapons and Armour from Erebor may have up to three Enchanted Qualities, but only one of them may be either Ancient or Superior.

### NEW ENCHANTED QUALITIES

The following Enchanted Qualities can be assigned to Legendary Weapons and Armour of Dwarven craftsmanship.

#### Fierce

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven (Nogrod)

**Item:** Close combat weapon

The Dwarves of Nogrod could forge blades and spear heads so sharp that they could penetrate the toughest of armour, and were feared even by the mightiest servants of the Enemy.

When you miss on an attack roll with a weapon with this Enchanted Quality, as long as you did not roll a natural 1, you still deal 1 point of the appropriate damage type to the target as the tip of your weapon cuts into its armour.

#### Fireproof

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven (Belegost)

**Item:** Armour, Helm

The Dwarves of Belegost were said to be able to withstand fire more hardily than any of their kind. This was partly due to their ability in fashioning armour that was almost impervious to heat and flame.

While wearing armour with this Enchanted Quality, you gain resistance to fire damage, including Dragon-flame.

#### Masterpiece

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven

**Item:** Any

An object possessing this Quality is obviously the work of an ancient master Dwarf-smith who wrought it in the deeps of time. Maybe Telchar of Nogrod himself made it, or even his old master. Blessed by a surpassing beauty, it never rusts, and shines as if burnished anew even when left unattended for centuries.

In any Audience, the bearer of this armour may make an Introduction Check with Advantage. If meeting with Dwarves, both the Introduction Check and the Final Audience Check are made with Advantage.

## Runes of Resilience

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven

**Item:** Armour, Helm

This particular set of armour is engraved with runes of protective magic that assist the wearer in recovery.

While wearing armour with this Enchanted Quality, you have Advantage on death saving throws.

## Venomed

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven

**Item:** Close combat weapon

Old legends preserved in the chamber of records in Erebor and whispered among the Northmen tell how Dwarves of Eastern mansions came under the Shadow and turned to evil. No one is alive today who could confirm such tales, but in treasure-hoards it is still possible to find instruments of war of Dwarven craftsmanship, marked with baleful runes that no smith of Durin's folk would confess to know; engravings capable to make a foe sick.



When you are using a weapon bestowed with this Quality and you inflict damage on an adversary for the first time, your foe is considered to be Poisoned for a number of rounds equal to your Shadow rating (minimum of 1 round). Using this weapon against those who do not serve the Enemy directly (for example, against misguided Men or beasts who are defending their home or young) is a Misdeed worthy of Shadow points.

## FAMOUS DWARVEN WEAPONS AND ARMOUR

The following section contains a number of famous weapons and armour made by the Dwarves in ages past. You may wish to incorporate these items into your Magical Treasure Index (see *Rivendell Region Guide*, page 97) if appropriate.

### Agarial

**Type:** Short sword

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven (Nogrod)

**Qualities:** 1. Masterpiece 2. Fierce 3. Superior Fell

**Notes:** A blade thought lost forever at the end of the First Age and forged as part of a set of similar weapons by Telchar himself, Agarial is akin to the blade used by Beren to steal the Great Jewel from the Iron Crown of Morgoth. Though it is an instrument of death, Agarial is a thing of surpassing beauty, a work of skill without peer in the world today.

### The Black Axe of Beleriand

**Type:** Great Axe

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven (Nogrod)

**Qualities:** 1. Grievous 2. Superior Keen 3. Venomed

**Notes:** A dangerous blade whose tragic history is one of great deeds and terrible sorrow, the Black Axe was wielded by many chieftains of the Edain in the First Age.

### The Shield of Anar (Rhingalad)

**Type:** Shield

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven (Khazad-dûm)

**Qualities:** 1. Cunning Make 2. Superior Reinforced  
3. Blessing: Inspire

**Notes:** A sturdy shield forged from iron and embossed with gleaming ithildin runes, the Shield of Anar burns with a cold light which, in the hands of the right hero, hardens resolve and lifts the hearts of others, driving them on to valiant deeds. Called Rhingalad by the Elves and still sung of in song, it disappeared during the fall of Eregion. At the time its bearer, Anar the True, gave his life so that the last children of Hollin could flee safely with Elrond of Rivendell.

## War-mask of Belegost

**Type:** Helm

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven (Belegost)

**Qualities:** 1. Runes of Resilience 2. Gleam of Terror  
3. Fireproof

**Notes:** A headpiece worn by a legendary Dwarf-lord, this helm incorporates a full faceplate intricately engraved to look hideous and grotesque, revealing only a glint of its wearer's eyes when worn. The helm has what appears to be scorch marks covering it that neither craft nor magic can remove, yet it is otherwise unmarred.



## Angrenithil

**Type:** Long Sword

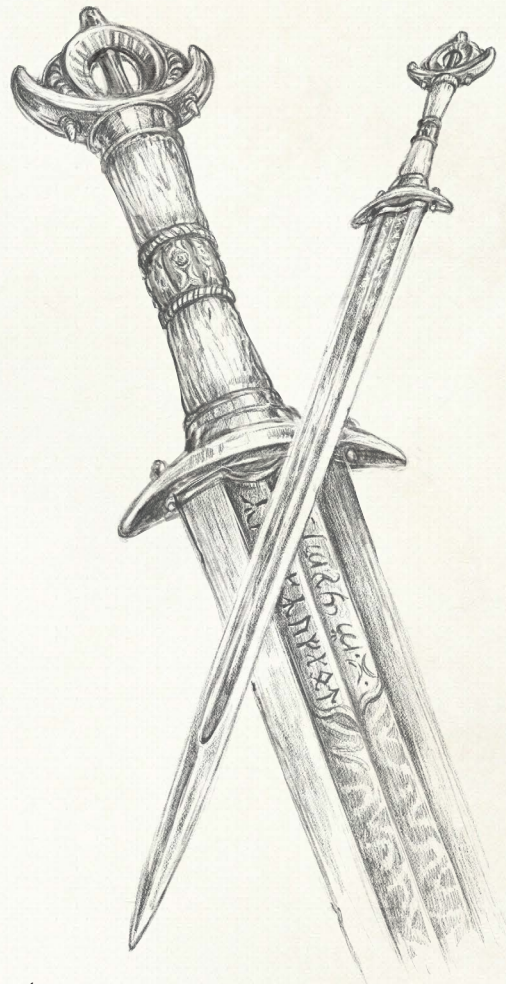
**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven (Khazad-dûm)

**Banes:** Orc-kind

**Qualities:** 1. Grievous 2. Foe-slaying 3. Superior Fell

**Notes:** Forged in the final century before the fall of Erebor, Angrenithil is made of shining steel and Mithril, though this is only evident by moon or starlight when the blade's

runes glow in the dark. Forged in friendship between a great Dwarven and Elven smith, bound with their mutual hatred of their chief foes, the blade is truly perilous to Orcs. Though Angrenithil is long lost, the Goblins of the Misty Mountains fear it still. In their rough tongue they name it "moon shanker" and they curse it, along with anyone who may bear it.



## Drake-bane

**Type:** Spear

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven (Erebor)

**Banes:** n/a

**Qualities:** 1. Grievous 2. Superior Keen

**Notes:** When Dwarves forge arms for their own use, they generally prefer to craft weapons other than spears. But during their struggle with the Dragons in the Grey Mountains, they found it prudent to not always draw close to their scaled foes. This is but one of a number of spears that was forged with similarly optimistic names.



## DWARVEN SMITHING

"They spoke most of gold and silver and jewels and the making of things by smith-craft"

While the ancient secrets of metalwork are lost to the Dwarves, even in the twilight years of the Third Age a master smith can still manage to forge something wondrous, though it will take years to find the right materials and a lifetime's worth of skill to succeed.

A determined smith can attempt to create a new weapon or piece of defensive gear blessed with one Enchanted Quality (see *Loremaster's Guide*, page 130). To do so, the hero must choose the Dwarven-smithing Fellowship phase undertaking described below over the course of several years. During this time, the Dwarf will work the forge or spend time searching for great materials, metals and tools that may expedite the accomplishment of the task.

- A Dwarven smith can only enchant one item in his lifetime – the work of long years and the draining act of exerting all their prowess cannot be readily repeated.

### NEW FELLOWSHIP PHASE UNDERTAKING: DWARVEN-SMITHING

A Dwarf hero with a Proficiency Bonus of +4 or more can return home during a Fellowship phase and spend the cold season in the forges to attempt a great work. To succeed, the Dwarven-smith must accumulate 9 Craftsmanship points.

To gain Craftsmanship points during a Fellowship phase the smith may make a Strength check, spend Hit Dice, gain Shadow points, or a combination of the three.

- Make a **DC 20 Strength (Smith's Tools)** check. Gain 1 Craftsmanship point on a success, 2 points if you succeed by 5 or more, or 3 points if you succeed with a natural 20 result. If you use one or more *great materials* in your undertaking (see below), you can reduce the difficulty of this check.
- You gain 1 Craftsmanship point for each 2 Hit Dice you choose to spend. You begin the next Adventuring phase with these Hit Dice already expended.

- Finally, the smith may acquire Craftsmanship points by gaining permanent Shadow, at the cost of 1 point of permanent Shadow for each Craftsmanship point gained. The first time a smith chooses to gain permanent Shadow for Craftsmanship points, the hero becomes *driven*, and will think of little else but finishing the task. From that moment on, the companion must always choose Dwarven-smithing as an undertaking for each Fellowship phase. If the Loremaster allows two undertakings for an especially long Fellowship phase, one of them must be spent on Dwarven-smithing. If the Company takes a Fellowship phase in a place ill-suited for smithy-work then the *driven* companion cannot take an undertaking and instead gains 1 point of temporary Shadow from frustration. A *driven* smith gains Advantage on their checks to earn Craftsmanship points but gains a point of temporary Shadow on a failed check.

If a driven smith rolls a natural 20 on a Craftsmanship check, they are no longer driven. Furthermore, the companion can either add a +1 magical modifier to the item or a Blessing as if was a Wondrous Artefact (see page 127 of the *Loremaster's Guide*).



When the Dwarven smith finally accumulates their ninth Craftsmanship point, the masterwork is complete. The smith chooses one of the following Enchanted Qualities to add to the newly-forged artefact (and he won't be able to choose the Dwarven-smithing undertaking ever again):

*Cleaving, Close-fitting, Crushing, Cunning Make, Fell, Fierce, Flame of Hope, Gleam of Terror, Keen, Reinforced, Rune-scored Shield, Runes of Protection, Runes of Resilience, Runes of Victory, Smiting.*

## Great Materials

The following list includes precious ores and tools that may greatly help a master smith in accomplishing their great work. Each item available lowers the difficulty by 1 to a minimum of DC 17.

A hero choosing the Dwarven-smithing undertaking may forfeit the opportunity to earn Craftsmanship points and instead gather one great material from those listed below. No check is required, but each item may only be chosen once.

- Unwrought Moria-silver (mithril).
- A set of ancient smithing tools from Eregion.
- Fireheart gems from the lost Fireheart Mine in the Grey Mountains (see page 68).

Alternatively, the Loremaster may allow the hero to come by the required materials while adventuring.

### But my armour is made of mithril!

Loremasters may note that while a Dwarven-smith can forge a suit of armour using Mithril as a great material, they cannot give it the Mithril Armour Quality. This is intentional. Mithril armour of old had near-impossibly fine chain links the likes of which cannot be forged in the Third Age. Alas for the withering of the world.

Dwarf-smithing undertaking again and enters the forge. The DC for his Strength check is 18 (Base DC 20, -2 for two types of great materials).

He rolls a 19 on his check (10 on the d20, +5 for his Strength modifier, +4 for his Proficiency Bonus for his smith's tools) and gains 1 Craftsmanship point. Additionally, Sviør spends 4 Hit Dice and chooses to gain 1 point of permanent Shadow. This raises his total Craftsmanship points earned this undertaking to 4 but also means he is now driven and bent on finishing his great work with all his strength.

Unfortunately, the Company elects to take their next Fellowship phase at the Eyrie of the Great Eagles. Denied the opportunity to work on his axe, Sviør fumes and gains a point of temporary Shadow instead. He cannot take a different undertaking and thus cannot benefit from being at the Eyrie.

The following Fellowship phase, Sviør must yet again choose the Dwarven-smithing undertaking. He now has Advantage on his Strength (Smith's Tools) check and scores a natural 20! In addition to gaining 3 Craftsmanship points, he can choose to add a +1 bonus to the weapon or a Blessing. The Loremaster agrees to the bonus, so that in addition to whatever Quality he applies it will also be a Magical Weapon +1.

Sviør doesn't want to spend Hit Dice or gain more permanent Shadow at this time, so he has earned a total of 7 Craftsmanship points. He is no longer driven so he will not have Advantage on the next check.

## EXTENDED EXAMPLE OF DWARVEN-SMITHING

Sviør the Stout sets out to make a mighty axe that honours his ancestors. Sviør is a master craftsman, with a Proficiency Bonus of +4, so he has the expertise to succeed. He found some unwrought mithril while adventuring in Wilderland, but to be sure he spends the first smithing Fellowship phase gathering a set of ancient tools from Eregion. On the following Fellowship phase he chooses the

Before his fifth time undertaking Dwarven-smithing, Sviør has reached 13th level and now has a +5 Proficiency Bonus. He rolls a 8, meaning he's just hit his DC of 18 with his modifiers. He's now at 8 Craftsmanship points! Will he spend Hit Dice or gain another point of permanent Shadow to finish what he started? Or will he wait another Fellowship phase?



## - Dale -

"There lies all that is left of Dale," said Balin.  
 "The mountain's sides were green with woods  
 and all the sheltered valley rich and pleasant in  
 the days when the bells rang in that town."

Travellers heading north from the Long Lake along the western bank of the River Running will find their feet upon an old road called the Merchants Way. Before them, grey and jagged, rises a single broad peak, dominating the landscape: the Lonely Mountain. Soon, the Long Marshes' boggy ground gives way and the road becomes surrounded by lush fields, tilled to the horizon, overflowing with grains here, a small orchard over there. To the west, they can see the dark edge of Mirkwood forest, but it does not look so foreboding here, for they look upon the easternmost edge of the Elvenking's Woodland Realm.

After a day of the Lonely Mountain looming ever higher, a southern spur of the mountain arises before them, beckoning them forward. Beneath the great watchtower set upon the height known as Ravenhill, the Running River twists and turns away, to run in a wide loop about a valley encircled by two vast arms of the Mountain. The Merchants Way follows the river up into that valley, where a great city

rises: the heart of the swiftest-growing nation in the North, the realm of the Dragon-slayer, a kingdom of Men built before the gates of a kingdom of Dwarves, forged from the broken ruins of the last realm to bear its name... Dale.

### A HISTORY OF DALE

While in the early years of King Bard's rule Dale seems young and vibrant, the roots of the city are nearly 400 years old.

#### THE FIRST FOUNDING (2590-2770)

In the year 2590 of the Third Age, King Thrór relocated to Erebor from the Grey Mountains, bearing the Arkenstone back to the halls where it was first found. Thrór's father, Dáin I, had been slain before the doors of his own hall by a Cold-drake the previous year, and Thrór sought a new beginning for his people. He found it in the halls first carved by his ancestor, Thráin I. The Dwarves greatly extended the original mines beneath the mountain, discovering gold and jewels in abundance. Ever larger workshops and bigger halls were carved out of the rock, and Durin's folk prospered.

The riches beneath Erebor were many, but a Dwarf cannot eat stone, even if some legends may say otherwise. Fortunately, they were greatly aided in their endeavours



by the fair-haired Northmen who lived south of the Lonely Mountain, along the Running River. The wealth of the King under the Mountain brought these Northmen into the valley before the gates of Erebor, where they eventually founded the city of Dale, becoming the main providers of food for the Dwarves in exchange for their work as skilled smiths and masons.

Erebor and Dale flourished for nearly two centuries, the wealth of both realms celebrated in song.

### Of Dwarves and Men

The relationship between Dwarves and Men began so far back in time that no one among either folk remembers exactly how and when it all started. The Dwarves have never kept precise records of their dealings, and Men soon forget. There was a time, though, when such relationships were common throughout Wilderland and mutually profitable, especially between the Northmen of Rhovanion and the Longbeards.

For the folk of Durin once considered the lands between the Misty Mountains and the Grey as their own, and the Men inhabiting the Vales of the Anduin and the eaves of Mirkwood were many. Wherever the Longbeards had a mansion, Men worked for them as shepherds, herdsmen and land-tillers, and the Dwarves provided them with weapons and arms and other useful tools that their own poor metalworking could not produce without great cost and toil. Together, Dwarves and Men prospered, defending themselves from the ravages of Orcs and other enemies for many centuries, supported by bonds of mutual trust and friendship.

When the great mansions of the Dwarves of old started falling, one by one, in their decline they brought down those colonies of Northmen that depended upon their trade with them. Dwarves and Men were both much diminished in Wilderland, with only Erebor and Dale (or the Iron Hills and Ironthorpe, see pg. 72) surviving to recall the power both folks enjoyed in times long past.

### THE COMING OF THE DRAGON (2770-2941)

In the year 2770, Thrór, old even by the standards of his long-lived folk, was still King under the Mountain. Many rulers had arisen and passed among the Northmen since the foundations of Dale, but in that fateful year, Girion was lord. From the north, driving the wind before him, came Smaug the Golden, greediest and most powerful of the Dragons in his day. In flames, the Great Worm laid waste to Dale. Girion fell defending his city, though his wife and young son escaped south along the river to Esgaroth. Smaug went into the halls of Erebor, slaying all who dared stand before him as he took the Lonely Mountain as his own.

The Dwarves were utterly broken, scattering east and west. The Northmen soon deserted their homes, for Smaug had a wicked heart and a taste for maidens. Taking what little they had left, the folk of Dale fled their once great city to live diminished lives as poor fishermen and simple traders along the western banks of the Long Lake in Esgaroth, itself a mere shadow of its former glory. The predations of the Dragon destroyed the countryside for vast distances about the Mountain and the Lake-men rebuilt Esgaroth onto the Long Lake itself, reasoning the lake was the best defence they had against the Dragon's fire. Though Smaug slept for greater and greater stretches of years at a time, the once-abundant valley of Dale, then the lands beyond were tainted by his foul presence and fell into ruin.

### THE DEATH OF SMAUG AND THE RISE OF KING BARD (2941-PRESENT)

With the events surrounding the coming of Thorin's Company, Lake-town felt the Dragon's wrath for the first time in many long years, but in thinking Men weak and himself invulnerable, Smaug was deceived. Bard the Bowman, descendant of the line of Girion, ended the Dragon in a single fateful shot, with a black arrow forged in Erebor of old.

Bard was hailed as a hero by his people for his deed and his great courage, and some voices declared that he should be king. For his part, Bard did not claim dominion over the folk of Lake-town, acknowledging himself as merely a servant of Esgaroth's Master. But in those dark days a fire was surely awoken within the Bowman. It was Bard who led the forces of Men at the Battle of Five Armies.

In the aftermath of the victory at that great battle, he was granted a fourteenth share of all the Dragon had stolen, in part due to his deed in slaying the Dragon, but also in keeping with his return of the Arkenstone of Thráin, and perhaps, the wisdom of the new King under the Mountain, Dáin. Bard dealt his wealth well, assisting the folk of Lake-town survive through a hard winter, before seeking his own kingdom in Dale. In rebuilding Dale, Bard had a great deal of help from his new allies, for the Elvenking Thranduil joined King Dáin in offering their assistance in restoring Dale. For many years Dwarves, Elves and Men laboured to build Dale anew. Their task is not yet accomplished, for the heart of the Bowman harbours great ambitions. Nonetheless after long years of hard work, Bard assented to be crowned King.

The Kingdom of Dale does not yet extend far beyond the city, but Bard dreams of a wider realm of Men stretching

across the North. For now, Dale flourishes, with new farms founded, new fields tilled, and new constructions begun on a weekly basis. Lake-town remains a fiercely independent city, but even so, many of the folk of Esgaroth look to King Bard for guidance and leadership. Dale's relationship with Erebor remains its strongest one, for just as of old, Dale has become the breadbasket of the Lonely Mountain and the markets of Dale are filled with the work of Durin's folk.

## THE CITY OF DALE

Dale lies directly before the gates of Erebor and the headwaters of the Running River, within a wide valley encircled by the great southern and south-eastern spurs of the Lonely Mountain. The mountain sides, long barren due to the Dragon's influence, grow green again, though they lack the great trees they once bore. Due to the mountain's

### Combat Scenery for Towns

**Large towns like Dale (or their much larger cousins in the South) allow the Loremaster to present some additional challenges for a combat. Use the descriptions found in the sections below to determine the best scenery to deploy as needed.**

**Ditches:** During a combat in the streets, drainage-works can easily catch the unwary. Whenever a creature crosses this terrain feature, they must make a DC 8 Dexterity saving throw or become Prone.

**Doors:** Most doors are made of wood, sometimes reinforced by metal strips (AC 15, 20 hp). An open door can provide three-quarters cover for someone ducking behind it, and a closed door blocks line of sight entirely.

**Good Cheer:** Heroes hunting a skulking assassin in the dark streets of a town can easily forget why they are risking life and limb. A sudden burst of song or laughter from a nearby tavern or inn can remind them that they protect the innocence of the common folk. Goodly creatures gain Inspiration.

**Roofs:** Thatched roofs are unlikely to support much weight, causing creatures to fall into the structure. Tiled

or wooden shingled roofs often count as steep slopes, giving those higher up Advantage and lower combatants Disadvantage.

**Tunnels:** Larger townships might have complex sewer and drainage systems. Even the largest tunnels only allow one or two creatures to stand side-by-side, creatures wielding two-handed weapons have Disadvantage on attack rolls and only the foremost creature in an enemy group can be targeted by ranged weapons.

**Walls:** House walls are varied — sod (AC 10, 30 hp), wood (AC 15, 20 hp) or brick/stone (AC 17, 30 hp). A creature next to a wall can gain half-cover from it if their attacker does not have a clear line of sight.

**Windows:** Most have wooden shutters and some will have glass panes. A large open window between two combatants provides three-quarters cover while a smaller window offers full cover.

There are many other pieces of combat scenery that could be featured in a town combat: covered or open pits, foundations, lone trees, mud, rubble and statues to name a few.

ridges, Dale lies often in shadow. The sun rising over the south-eastern spur doesn't directly touch Dale till mid morning, when the first rays reach the front gate of the Royal Palace and shade is cast again once the sun has passed into the west behind the southern spur. Dale is enclosed by a tall crenellated wall that encompasses more space than the town presently occupies, for it was

built upon the foundations of the old fortification that encircled the ancient city. Along the north, all of the east, and part of the southern wall, the River Running flows, before heading south down to the Long Lake and beyond. Outside of the southern reaches of the wall stands a large complex of landings and quays where a constant stream of traffic comes and goes along the river.

## Describing Dale

Thanks to the joint efforts of hard-working Men, Dwarven masons and Elvish woodwrights, Dale is a wondrous city, a marvel of carved stone and flowing waters, where bustling activity never seems to cease. Older Dwarves who walked the streets of the original city declare that Dale is even more beautiful than ever it was in the old days. The Bardings are justifiably proud of what they have accomplished in building their fair city, but there is always a sense here that there is more to be done, more to be achieved. This spirit drives them and, in turn, affects much of the character of Dale. Here are some of the common elements of descriptions that the Loremaster may refer to when setting a game in the city of Dale.

### Water & Stone

Dale is a stone city traversed by water, compared with Esgaroth, a wooden town built above a lake. It is filled with magnificent sculptures, beautiful fountains, quiet pools and deep waterways ferrying passengers and goods. The main roads of Dale are all paved with stones of various colours, from which the streets have taken their names. The dozens of bridges that reach across the watercourses in single, double or even triple arches, vary from narrow structures allowing people to cross in single file to wide passageways meant for the heavy traffic of carts and horses. More towers rise every year, the newer ones taller than those built the year before, in a race sponsored by the city's affluent noblemen. Their bells can be heard ringing for miles around, calling the farmers to the market or the many workers of the city to their toil or rest.

### Hustle & Bustle

Dale is seemingly in a near-constant state of activity and growth. Though the city has more or less been 'restored'

and is certainly thriving, long-term endeavours, such as strengthening the fortifications and paving the roads, are still ongoing, with new undertakings beginning every month. Everywhere architects, apprentices, stonemasons and carpenters, along with all their varied tools and materials, can be seen at work. Additionally, Dale is home to many other busy craftsmen, from skilled smiths to cunning firework manufacturers. The clanging of metal and the report of small explosions resound along the cobblestones near the Ravensgate District. To this din are added the many sounds of commerce: coins tinkling, merchants calling and folk haggling in various tongues. A wide variety of markets are open throughout Dale during the day, with a few that are even open late at night, though traders are expected to adjust their shouts accordingly. Many folk regard resettling in Dale as a chance to begin their lives afresh, hopefully improving their lot, and offering their children a different life than one spent in hard toil on the edges of the Wild. The many immigrants flowing into Dale thus add to the commotion, a state of affairs that King Bard actively encourages in the earlier years of his reign.

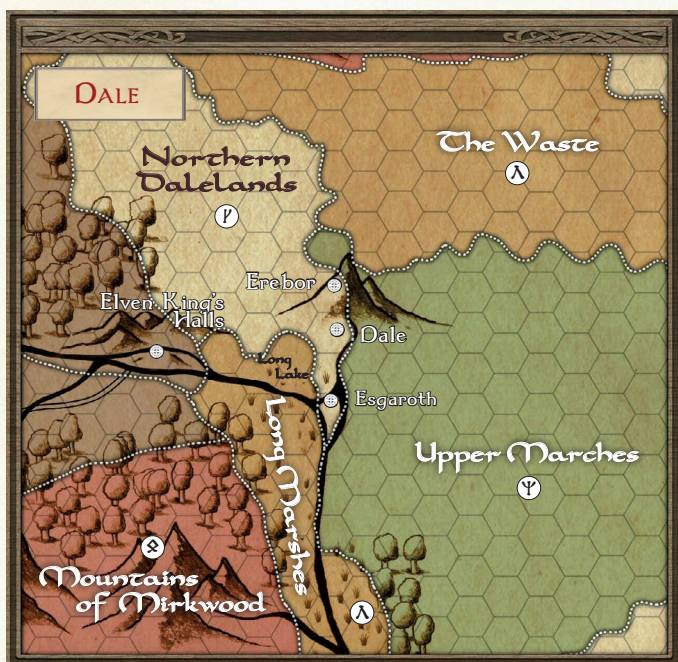
### Many Folk, Many Lives

Dale is rapidly becoming the largest Northman settlement in the area and for all but the most far-travelled folk it is the biggest town they will ever walk the streets of. It is certainly one of the most diverse cities in all of Middle earth, perhaps exceeded in this only by its neighbour, Lake-town; however, while Esgaroth was rebuilt as a city of Men, albeit an unusual one, Dale is as much a city of Dwarves as it is a city of Northmen. The Bardings have been heavily influenced by the folk of Erebor and it shows in their architecture. Nor are the Wood-Elves strangers to the streets of Dale.



## The City of Dale

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 - Traders Gate         | 12 - White Lane          |
| 2 - Ravensgate           | 13 - Anvil Way           |
| 3 - Merchants Way        | 14 - Royal Palace        |
| 4 - The Quays            | 15 - Royal Barracks      |
| 5 - South Quay           | 16 - Residential Quarter |
| 6 - Merchants Quarter    | 17 - The Commons         |
| 7 - Farmers-market       | 18 - The Nest            |
| 8 - The River Road       | 19 - The Water House     |
| 9 - Market Square        | 20 - Old Quarter         |
| 10 - The Missing Scale   | 21 - Snapfire Alley      |
| 11 - Ravensgate District | 22 - Brokenstone         |
|                          | 23 - Red Row             |



## THE GATES OF DALE

The crenellated rampart surrounding Dale is an imposing fortification, standing as high as five men and thick enough that two horses could trot abreast along its top. For such was the majesty of the curtain wall of Dale of old, before Smaug burnt it and time ravaged it, a grandeur that King Bard wanted to revive, should another army of Orcs or worse dare to assail them again.

The City Guard regularly patrol the city walls. The Guard send signals and receive answers from the Dwarf warriors stationed in the watchtower atop Ravenhill at every hour. From their vantage point on the side of the Mountain the Dwarves may see if enemies are approaching Dale long before anyone nestled in the city's sheltered valley could (see page 18).

Building the wall took several years and many hundreds of craftsmen toiled under the watchful eyes of Dwarven masons. It was completed in early 2945. The wall has but two openings along its great length: the south-facing Traders Gate and the north-west-facing Ravensgate. The gates are towering wooden doors, flanked by stone ramparts, and set with heavy iron hinges.

Both gates are designed to open and close smoothly, with only a handful of guards needed to operate their

mechanisms. In normal times, the Traders Gate rarely closes, even at night, but the Ravensgate is always barred not long after twilight.

Anyone wishing to pass into or out of the city unnoticed must, in general, go over the wall. It will normally take a **DC 13 Dexterity (Stealth)** check to go over the wall unseen (waiting until night grants Advantage on this check) and a **DC 15 Strength (Athletics)** check to scale the wall. A failure on the first check will swiftly draw the attention of the City Guard, the second, a 25 ft fall.

## THE MERCHANTS WAY

The southbound road to Esgaroth was originally a worn-over trail, long gone to green from disuse, and all but disappeared into the encroaching boggy ground of the northern Long Marshes. With the refounding of Dale, both King Bard and the Master of Lake-town soon recognised that traffic and commerce between the two towns would be greatly aided by a better road. Luckily, the road had tough bones, for it was laid by the Dwarves, as were the majority of roads traversing Wilderland; the way was easily refurbished and immediately filled with traders and travellers both.

The Merchants Way falls under the authority of the crown of Dale, and the King's men ride and patrol along it. A secondary road splits off from the Merchants Way as it enters the valley of Dale, right before it passes under the Traders Gate, to wind north-east to the Quays outside the city wall, along the Running River.

The Merchants Way counts as a good road (very easy) for the purposes of travel between Dale and Lake-town, though heavy rains or other inclement weather can temporarily raise the terrain difficulty to easy or even moderate.

## THE QUAYS

East of the Traders Gate lie the city's landings, through which flow the majority of the city's imported and exported goods regularly flow through (the rest enter the city by land, from the Merchants Way). Wares from Lake-town, Mirkwood, and sometimes points on the map more distant still pass through here to the markets of Dale. In turn, numerous Dwarven products and the budding craftsmanship of the Bardings flow out from here.





Trade being one of the cornerstones of Dale's prosperity, the various landings and moorings that make up the quays are well kept and a specially appointed official is charged with all business conducted upon them. This Reeve of the Quays and his men patrol here regularly during the day, as much to collect taxes as to settle any quarrels between merchants. However, the Quays are so very busy that wiser merchants look to the security of their own wares themselves, especially at night.

### The South Quay

Typically, goods shipped to Dale that are destined to be sold in large quantities are brought in to the city. The wares are then stored in one of the many trading houses or warehouses of the Merchants Quarter. For a variety of reasons, a few merchants prefer to leave their goods upon their ships; some don't have the funds required to rent storage in a warehouse in Dale, others intend to sell their entire cargo at once and do not wish to bother transporting it several times. Regardless of their motives, such merchants seek to berth their ships at the South Quay, the oldest and cheapest of the wharves of Dale.

The South Quay still serves the same purpose now for which it was first built near four hundred years ago. Exactly who laid the stones of the landings have been lost to time, though Dwarves confidently swear it was clearly a master of their people. While the South Quay still bears the distinct scorch marks of Dragon-fire, it remains seamless and intact. Despite its storied history, its status as the cheapest mooring area of the city attracts many unsavoury fellows, who often skulk about the shadows, waiting for an opportunity to offer their services.

### THE MERCHANTS QUARTER

The Merchants Quarter is the fastest growing neighbourhood of the city. The Quarter starts at one end of Merchants Way, through the open doors of the Traders Gate. Deals are struck and fortunes are made at all hours of the day and late into the night. The Merchants Quarter is perpetually filled with all manner of folk: farmers trading their goods, merchants from across Wilderland come to peddle their wares or acquire the same to sell elsewhere, buyers of every stripe looking to obtain the merchandise of the North's busiest market or Dwarven forge work direct from Erebor, and travellers who have come to look upon the realm of the Dragon slayer.

The Merchants Quarter contains several large warehouses for the many goods intended to be sold down the river in Lake-town, as well as a few buildings used to store raw materials coming into the city or ultimately intended for Erebor. There are also a fair number of drinking halls and taverns for the many passing travellers here, including one of the first new inns built in Dale, the Drunkenstone (see *Wilderland Adventures*, page 100).

Strangers to Dale wishing to find the marketplace are directed to take the "River Road", which is a street leading in a gentle curve to the Market Square in the northern portion of the quarter. The Blue Way is not the proper street name, but since it weaves over and beside several waterways, along with the stones' colour, the local nickname has stuck.

The south-eastern portion of the Merchants Quarter is given over to the Farmers-market, a section of streets filled with goods and livestock from the many farms to the south and west of Dale. Within the Farmers-market is the Hunters Row, a series of stalls where fowl and game animals are to be had, along with butchers able to prepare meats as requested, to satisfy both their Barding and Dwarf customers.

### Merchants of Dale

The merchants of Dale generally fall into one of three categories: independent entrepreneurs looking to ply their wares and build their own personal fortunes; members of the older, established Guild of Merchants based out of Lake-town looking to expand their businesses; or representatives for others, such as shop-keepers who sell goods for Dwarven smiths that prefer their work at the forge to haggling on the street. Unlike the more reserved merchants of Esgaroth, merchants in Dale tend to be more outgoing to keep up with the pace of the city but otherwise have the same motivation and expectations as given on page 69 of the *Loremaster's Guide*.

### Market Square

In many ways the heart of the city, the Market Square sits on the northern edge of the Merchants Quarter, nearly at the exact centre of Dale. When folks from afar speak of the "great market of Dale" they are usually referring to the Market Square. Paved with stones of every colour from the other streets of Dale, set in patterns to identify the rightful

position of every seller in town, the Market Square would be a vast open area, if not for the massive profusion of stalls, pedlars' carts, brightly coloured tents and wagons that regularly cover it. With new traders coming and going daily, the goods available at the market change constantly. Merchants, travellers, and locals come here in the hope of finding a fair trade, gaining a few coins and, sometimes, to see something they never imagined even existed in the world.

The goods on offer in the Market Square can seem near endless. There are local goods from the nearby farms and the Northern Dalelands, including: seasonal fruit, fresh fish, game meats, fowl and robust wooden furniture. Traders from Esgaroth bring exotic woven cloths, outlandish pieces of jewellery from distant lands to the South, as well as stunningly crafted musical instruments from the Woodland Realm and hunting bows or tooled leathers and durable woodcraft from west of Mirkwood. Here the fabled wines of Dorwinion can sometimes be purchased, a drink so potent and sweet that it can render even the hardest of Dwarves into a stupor.

Occasionally, merchants arrive from even farther afield, travellers from the East bringing strange tales, exotic goods and wondrous spices, alongside road-weary Dwarves dressed in fine wools from the West, bringing pipe-weed and small kegs of fine beer from the Shire. Some stalls offer other goods of far stranger providence: talismans and charms, books of lore, potions and cure alls, powders and scrolls. All are claimed to have great virtues, though very few indeed are guaranteed to work in every case.

Many folks come merely to sample the unusual culinary fare the market has to offer: candied apples and sugary figs, meat spiked on sticks, ales, Dwarven spirits potent enough to render an unwary man blind, mead from Thranduil's halls, spiced fish, cups of hardy stew, soft bread and warm cider.

Folks that come to the market seeking the work of the Dwarves of Erebor are soon directed to the northern end of Market Square, where a sturdy bridge passes over a narrow watercourse to a row of small shops. The stores here all have simple fronts, a few of the smallest have only a simple sign bearing nothing more than a single

Craftsman's Rune, the signature mark of the smith whose work the shop conducts exclusively. A number of warriors, both Dwarves and Bardings, patrol this strip of shops, for this is where the majority of the handicraft of Durin's folk is sold in Dale. This is the place to purchase beautiful jewellery, including: sparkling jewels set upon slender chains, golden goblets inlaid with emeralds and silver bracelets ornamented with rubies.

Beautiful treasures are not the only things offered for sale here. Swords and axes, well-made shields bound with thick iron and the finest mail that coin can secure; all can be bought here for a fair, but firm, price. Particularly well-off visitors can arrange here to commission specific pieces of work from the Dwarves. Depending on what a buyer is seeking, arrangements may be made to hire one of the smiths of Anvil Way (see page 44) or they may even be sent on to the Lonely Mountain itself if their order is particularly large.

The Market Square is generally open every day of the week, from an hour past dawn till dusk. During the longer days of spring and summer the Market Square remains open until very late in the evening, to profit from the longer hours of twilight in the North. In winter, great lamps of brass and crystal are hung from poles about the marketplace to throw back the night on feast days, and a festival air reigns.

There are many special events throughout the year, but for two days of the first week of every month, the Market Square is given over to a very special event indeed...

### The Toy-market of Dale

On the first Monday and Thursday of each month the Market Square is transformed, with many of the stalls given over to a whole new selection of market goods: the Toy-market. Once called the "Wonder of the North" – a title the folk of Dale and Erebor both seem intent on reclaiming, the Toy-market changes the Market Square into a wondrous playground that attracts merchants from across Wilderland and far beyond.

Famed Dwarf artisans, many of whom seldom visit the marketplace in person, are on hand bearing their finest creations to compete with their fellow craftsmen and see the joy their work brings to children in person.

The toys for sale at the market change regularly with new creations appearing each month, while old favourites come and go. What is constant is that they are all made of intricately carved wood and metal, painstakingly crafted over weeks, months and, in some cases, even years. The greatest (and most expensive) are so cunningly wrought as to give the semblance of being magical: toy soldiers in the raiment of one of the Five Armies that will march upon command, barking mechanical dogs, tiny brass trumpets that emit strange calls when sounded and metal birds that sing sweet melodies, are just samples of the toys available.

All the children of Dale, even the poorest, own at least one of the fabled toys that bear the mark of the city. There is a toy here to capture the heart of any child and a great many adults as well.

During the Toy-market, on the eastern border of the Market Square not coincidentally set against a canal, can be found the stalls of the fire-workers; craftsmen who specialise in the dangerous art of making fireworks, a relatively recent profession encouraged by Gandalf the Grey. The fireworks sold here range from small whizz bangs to teeth-rattling thunder-claps with plenty of fire flowers and burning fountains as well. Particularly large or intricate fireworks may require a trip to Snapfire Alley on Red Row (see page 50) though the fire-workers here will be happy to point an interested party in the right direction.

### The Missing Scale

On the southern side of the Market Square sits an impressively large oak and stone inn. The shingle out front features a golden-red pattern of Dragon-scales, with one at the centre conspicuously black. *The Scale* is

## The Lightly Fingered

As always happens where coins flow in abundance, pickpockets and cutpurses ply the stalls and the less-guarded shops of the Market Square on busy days. Skilled pilferers posing as beggars and paupers blend into the crowds as they deftly cut purse strings and pluck easily accessible pockets.

If the companions spend an extended amount of time at the Market Square or any of Dale's other markets, whether just shopping, perhaps keeping a watch over someone they suspect, or acting as guards for a merchant, the Loremaster should roll a d12. If a 1 is rolled, one of the companions has become the chosen target of a thief. The Loremaster rolls 1d20+2d6 and compares that value to the passive Perception of the hero.

- If the thief has a result lower by 5 or more, then the player-hero knows they are being watched, but the thief remains unaware of their vigilance – allowing them to scare off the miscreant or catch the thief in the act if they so choose.
- If the thief's roll is equal to the hero's passive Perception or lower by 4 or less, the character spots the would-be thief watching them, but the companion's scrutiny causes the pickpocket to disappear into the crowd.
- If the thief's roll is better than the hero's passive Perception by 4 or less, the character has been robbed but it was something of lesser value (1d6 silver pennies or a small trinket).
- If the thief has result that is 5 or higher than the companion's passive Perception, the thief has stolen something far more valuable: something sentimental to the character, a family ring, a small Precious Object, or similar (1d6 gold pieces in value or coin). If the loss means something to the character, then they will have to set out to recover it, most likely by first seeking amidst the shadows of the Old Quarter... (see page 49).

Note that the system above provides for a simplified bit of roguery. If a named character is stalking the Company it may be more appropriate to make actual skill checks instead.

one of the busiest inns in the city and while the handbills proclaim it has “rooms fit for a King” it is the peerless wine (and, perhaps, location) that gives the place its success. The inn’s enormous common room can seat almost fifty patrons at its plentiful tables or along the polished bar that runs the length of the west wall, yet it is the baleful image of a Dragon that dominates the space. Crafted from wrought iron and lit from behind with candles, the glowing image runs along the wall opposite the bar. The Innkeeper Drucbord is especially proud of its design, made by his brother in Lake-town.

The flickering light of *The Missing Scale* has lit many a meeting, for it is frequented by all sorts of travellers to Dale, and the latest news from afar is often heard here even sooner than in the Royal Palace.

### RAVENSGATE DISTRICT

The Ravensgate District is where the majority of well-to-do and newly wealthy Bardings live in Dale. Many of the largest houses here were granted as gifts to the followers of the Dragon-slayer after the great victory at the Battle of Five Armies. Others belong to those made rich by trade or artistry. The district is constructed the closest to the Lonely Mountain, deep within the encircling mountain spurs, and it remains somewhat shadowed for a large portion of the day.

Watchmen carrying Dwarven lamps of iron and crystal beat the streets from early in the evening to late at night, and are quick to ask any miscreant caught wandering the area after dark to move along.

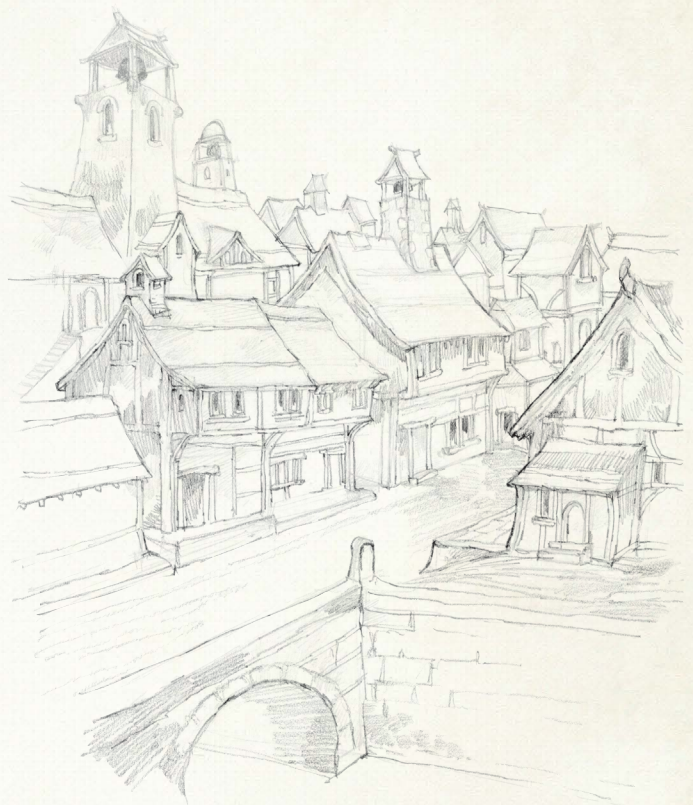
### White Lane

The longest street in the Ravensgate District starts near the city gate and winds its way around the eastern edge of the neighbourhood. Paved with white cobblestones and lined with tall, narrow houses, White Lane is where the craftsmen of Dale have their workshops and residences. Smiths of all types, fletchers, jewellery makers, glassblowers, leather workers, coopers and even a confectioner ply their trades here. Most renowned are the woodwrights, justly famed for their dependable furniture and their intricately engraved great bows.

Goods are seldom for sale on White Lane, as most of the craftsmen either keep a stall at the Market Square or

arrange for others to sell their goods elsewhere. A few of the artisans here are always interested in unusual materials that may help them create something sensational, in part because they wish to showcase their work against the more famed creations of the Dwarves.

A Company seeking employment may be hired by one of the craftsmen here to escort them into the heart of Mirkwood to bring back a specific type of wood or for some other equally dangerous task in pursuit of advancing the art of their chosen trade.



### Anvil Way

Starting along the southern border of the Ravensgate District, north of the Royal Palace, and ending just east of the northern edge of the Market Square, runs a street like no other in Dale. Instead of paved with coloured stones, as are all of Dale’s other streets, it is set with smooth plates of granite, expertly laid to be almost seamless, and named for the many smiths who live along it.

The ringing sound of hammer against anvil, the chipping of stone, the smell of burning coal, all carry to nearby shops at all hours of the day and occasionally late into

the night. For Anvil Way is the street where many of the Dwarves who have chosen not to live in Erebor make their homes and have their workshops. Clustered together in squat stone houses, these stout craftsmen forge iron and steel, shape stone, carve precious jewels and make wondrous toys.

A great many of the smithies here have their forges set in open areas, so that all who come down the lane can see the Dwarves hard at work with hammer and tongs. The hiss of freshly forged iron plunged into buckets of water combines with the ringing of metal on metal and the tinkling of small tools at work to create a music akin to that which fills the halls of Erebor.

While only a relative handful of Dwarves have chosen to live and work under the sky, they are all highly valued members of the community and treated as honoured guests in Dale. Their wares sell at a high premium, which the richest citizens of Dale and many a travelling merchant gladly pay, for the craftsmen of Anvil Way are as skilled as any artisan in the Lonely Mountain and, by all accounts, more approachable too.

Even so, it is difficult to get an appointment with the smiths here. The majority of their work is sold in small shops along the northern edge of the Market Square. Arrangements to consult with a smith generally need to be made in advance, through one of their agents there, mainly to stave off the otherwise continuous waves of Barding nobles and merchants who wish to apprentice their children with a Dwarven smith.

### Anvil Way Smith

The craftsmen of Anvil Way are widely reputed to be quite sociable for Dwarves, a notion that few folk who have met them entirely believe. In fact, they are far less taciturn than many of their folk. Indeed, in Dwarven circles, they are famed for their odd ways and strange ideas. Some of the craftsmen along Anvil Way are said to actually prefer to work under the open sky! The very idea... Still, none doubt their skill or the quality of their work. Their light-hearted nature is well reflected in the many toy-makers who have built their workshops along Anvil Way.

**Motivation:** To prove my worth as a creator despite my unusual choices in life.

**Expectations:** +3 if the heroes treat the smith with great deference (as if they called upon a master smith in Erebor itself); -2 if the companions are dismissive of the smith's calling or expertise.

### ANVIL WAY SMITH

*Medium Dwarf*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
17 (+3)	13 (+1)	12 (+1)	13 (+1)	12 (+1)	15 (+2)

**Armour Class** 12 (Shop Leathers)

**Hit Points** 11 (2d8+2)

**Speed** 25 ft

**Skills** Perception +3, Persuasion +4, Smith's Tools +5

**Senses** passive Perception 13, night vision

**Languages** Khuzdûl, Westron

**Challenge** 1/4 (50 XP)

**Stubborn.** During an Audience or other meeting, the Smith imposes Disadvantage on Charisma checks made by the heroes.

#### Actions

**Hammer.** *Melee or Thrown Weapon Attack:* +5 to hit, reach 5 ft or range 20/60 ft, one target. *Hit:* 5 (1d4+3) bludgeoning damage.

### ROYAL PALACE

Upon a low height near the centre of the city rises the royal residence of King Bard. A magnificent stone palace, the Royal Palace was built by Dwarven masons under the direction of the King under the Mountain. The building is a majestic, if somewhat daunting, sight, for it was constructed of dark polished stone quarried from the Lonely Mountain and it was built strong. The exterior is lined with a series of marble pillars, holding up a mighty vaulted roof. Before the massive, eastward facing front gates lies a magnificent fountain, which throws great arcs of water high into the air, where they crash above a sculpture of the Dragon, clearly representing the Fall of Smaug.

Two great openings border the eastern front gate, carved in such a way as to catch the first rays of the sun as they cascade over the south-eastern spur of the Mountain. The upper sides of the hall are lined with small windows of frosted glass, set deep in to the stone, and fitted with clever shutters that can easily be opened or closed at the King's

whim. The palace's interior resembles that of a Dwarven underground hall, a massive open space bordered with elegant stonework and high columns, lit by great glass lamps that hang from the distant ceiling, like so many small stars. Unlike in some of the more enclosed spaces within Erebor, though, cool breezes pass through the hall regularly.

King Bard's throne sits at the end of the open main hall, upon a raised dais. The carven wood throne is engraved with the full tale of the Black Arrow and was a gift from the Elvenking. The Dragon-slayer regularly holds court here, receiving dignitaries or dispensing justice as needed. Various Barding nobles and assorted functionaries come and go with great regularity, making the throne room a lively place.

On warm summer days, King Bard finds it agreeable to hold court in the open air. Just to the south of the palace lies a great courtyard, lined with seats of wood and stone, surrounded by lush greenery. Minstrels, poets, jesters and actors all perform here at times for the amusement of the King and his court.

### Barding Courtiers

A few of the most powerful noble lords come from families who were well-off merchants in Lake-town, many of which descended from the old nobility of Dale. Far more inclined to eloquence and reasoned debate than their younger compatriots, they represent a power bloc within Dale that the King cannot ignore, for they have influence over trade and many merchants. Some are extremely loyal to Bard, grateful for his courage and the opportunities he has afforded them. Others, though, regard the King as merely an upstart warrior who made a "lucky shot" and look to undermine him when they can. Determining which is which can be very difficult indeed...

### Barding Nobles

Many of the nobles of Dale are the young men and women who stood with Bard at the Battle of Five Armies and followed him north when he announced that he would reclaim Dale. They form the majority of the King's counsellors, assisting in the running of the court and city, or representing Dale as the King's envoys abroad. While a few of them do come from the older noble lines directly descended from the aristocracy of Dale of old, few are used

to the 'politics' that often play out in court manoeuvrings. They are, in the main, warriors more accustomed to action first and reasoned talk after.

### COURTIER *Medium Human*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
13 (+1)	11 (+0)	14 (+2)	17 (+3)	14 (+2)	19 (+4)

**Armour Class** 12 (Leather corslet)

**Hit Points** 32 (5d8+10)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Deception +6, Intimidation +6, Persuasion +8, Traditions +7

**Senses** passive Perception 12

**Languages** Westron

**Challenge** 1 (200 XP)

**Confound.** Courtiers are masters of turning an errant word into a deadly dagger to public opinion. In an Audience, the Courtier can force the spokesperson for the Company to make a **DC 12 Charisma** saving throw or gain Disadvantage on all further checks during the Audience.

**Lord of His Domain.** Courtiers only meet with adventurers in situations and places favorable to themselves. The Courtier imposes Disadvantage on the Introduction Check for an Audience.

**Expert.** Courtiers double their Proficiency Bonus for Persuasion and Traditions (included above).

#### Actions

**Dagger.** *Melee or Ranged Weapon Attack:* +3 to hit, reach 5 ft or range 20/60 ft, one target. *Hit:* 3 (1d4+1) piercing damage.



## NOBLE

*Medium Human*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
17 (+3)	13 (+1)	15 (+2)	13 (+1)	12 (+1)	17 (+3)

**Armour Class** 16 (Corslet of Mail, Swordmaster)

**Hit Points** 39 (6d8+12)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Athletics +5, Insight +3, Traditions +3

**Senses** passive Perception 11

**Languages** Westron

**Challenge** 2 (450 XP)

**Call to Arms.** If within Dale, the Noble can use his bonus action to summon 1d4+2 city guards (see page 48) which arrive at the end of his next turn.

**Swordmaster.** The Noble gains a +2 bonus to AC while wielding a broadsword or long sword (included above).

### Actions

**Long sword.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +5 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 7 (1d8+3) slashing damage or 8 (1d10+3) slashing damage when wielded with two hands.

### Reactions

**Counterattack (Recharge 5-6).** If an attack roll misses the Noble, he can use his reaction to make an attack roll with Advantage. He must be wielding a melee weapon and able to see his attacker.

## ROYAL BARRACKS

A solid gated keep just to the south of the Royal Palace, the Royal Barracks is home to the black-liveried Royal Archers, the elite bodyguards of the King, and a training ground for all the forces of Dale. The greatest fighters among King Bard's followers regularly train the city's youth here, hoping to instil some of their skills into the next generations. Elstan, the commander of the Royal Barracks and the First Captain of Dale (see page 53), will occasionally ask noteworthy adventurers to share some of their hard-won knowledge here, as will the King. Correspondingly, enough fighters of such great skill have taught here that even accomplished warriors have begun to occasionally visit in order to learn a few new tricks.

In addition to various training rooms, the barracks' walls encompass a long field where a handful of archers can always be found practising their skills. Many of the Royal Archers pride themselves on their crafting skills with

their weapons and the sight of one or more black-liveried warriors fletching their own arrows is a common one here.

## Royal Archers of Dale

The Royal Company of Archers consists of fifty members, hand-picked from among the greatest warriors and hunters in the North, to serve as the personal bodyguard of King Bard, as well as reinforcing the City Guard as needed. No distinctions of rank or lineage are made in their selection: skill alone counts for all.

Every warrior in the city dreams of joining the august ranks of the "Black Company", as they are often called, due to their distinctive head-to-toe black livery. The Royal Archers have a (mostly) friendly rivalry with the Bowman's Guild of Esgaroth and seek to best them at every opportunity.

## ROYAL ARCHER

*Medium Human*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
13 (+1)	19 (+4)	14 (+2)	10 (+0)	12 (+1)	11 (+0)

**Armour Class** 16 (black leather corslet)

**Hit Points** 58 (9d8+18)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Intimidation +2, Perception +3, Survival +3

**Senses** passive Perception 13

**Languages** Westron

**Challenge** 2 (450 XP)

**Eagle-feathered Arrow (1/day).** As a bonus action the Royal Archer draws this special arrow and attacks with her Great Bow. A successful hit causes a critical hit and any creature Medium size or smaller must make a **DC 15 Strength** saving throw or become Prone.

**Hawk's Eye.** The Royal Archer may use this ability as a bonus action. She does not suffer Disadvantage on attack rolls due to being at long range this turn.

### Actions

**Volley-storm (Recharge 5-6).** The Royal Archer can use her action to make a ranged attack against any number of creatures within 10 ft of a point she can see within her weapon's range. She must have ammunition for each target, as normal, and she makes a separate attack roll for each target.

**Great Bow.** *Ranged Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, range 150/600 ft, one target. *Hit:* 8 (1d8+4) piercing damage.

## RESIDENTIAL QUARTER

Most of the common citizens of Dale live in the western Residential Quarter. During the first five years since the founding of the city, the neighbourhood saw simple houses with tall and thick stone walls sprout rapidly like mushrooms, one next to the other, leaving only narrow lanes to separate them. As the city's wall stretches out to the west, there are still large portions of the quarter without buildings, and masons and workers are a common sight, as are the sounds of construction and the chipping of stone.

### The Commons

King Bard actively encourages the Free Folk who come to Dale seeking new lives to claim farms of their own by offering them land in the Upper Marches. Some, though, have no interest in farming and seek instead to become occupants of the city.

Unwilling to turn anyone away, but acknowledging that it can take time to find one's place or be able to secure accommodations, the King allows new citizens to pitch their tents in the southerly portion of the Residential Quarter, which has swiftly become known as "The Commons". Immigrants to Dale of less means are thus given the time and opportunity to partake in the prosperity of the city in order to gather enough funds to eventually move into a house, take up the King's offer of land or to decide to move on.

The Commons is an ever-shifting maze of tents and temporary constructions, which the City Guard patrols frequently. All sorts of folk come and go here regularly and not all of them are necessarily friends to Dale...

### The Nest

In the south-east of the Residential Quarter, near the Market Square, sits the heavily reinforced keep of the City Guard of Dale. It is universally known as "the Nest" due to the heraldry that all the City Guard bear: the Sign of the Thrush. Here the City Guard regularly train, and from here set out to patrol the city. While there are smaller guard posts throughout Dale, none have anywhere near the size, nor the activity levels, of the Nest.

### Dale's City Guard

Dale's City Guard are actively trained to keep an eye out for trouble and to try to diffuse situations with words

before resorting to violence. The few outsiders to Dale who mistake this reticence to come to blows as a weakness swiftly learn that many of the older guards and most of their commanders are veterans of the Battle of Five Armies. They typically patrol the city in squads of two to four, depending on the time of year and the size of the crowds.

While they make their presence felt in a few places, especially at the docks and the city gates, they generally do their best to remain in the background until needed elsewhere. They are, however, swift to step in to break up violent arguments and stop any fights that might threaten commerce in the city. If hard pressed, they can easily call upon assistance from their fellows or even nearby Royal Archers with silver whistles that they wear about their necks.

### CITY GUARD

*Medium Human*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
15 (+2)	12 (+1)	12 (+1)	11 (+0)	13 (+1)	10 (+0)

**Armour Class** 16 (corslet of mail, shield)

**Hit Points** 22 (4d8+4)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Investigation +2, Perception +3

**Senses** passive Perception 13

**Languages** Westron

**Challenge** 1/2 (100 XP)

**Battle Brothers.** If three or more guards are fighting the same enemy and that enemy has no allies engaged with the guards, the guards have Advantage on their attacks.

**Silver Whistle.** The guard can use his bonus reaction to summon help, which arrives at the end of his next turn. Roll 1d6: **1-4:** that number of City Guards; **5:** a Guard Commander; **6:** a Royal Archer.

#### Actions

**Long sword.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +4 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 6 (1d8+2) slashing damage or 7 (1d10+2) slashing damage if used with both hands.

#### Reactions

**Tackle.** When a creature moves out of the guard's reach, he may use his reaction to make a grapple attack with Advantage.



## GUARD COMMANDER

*Medium Human*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
17 (+3)	13 (+1)	15 (+2)	13 (+1)	14 (+2)	12 (+1)

**Armour Class** 20 (heavy mail, great shield)

**Hit Points** 52 (8d8+16)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Insight +4, Perception +4

**Senses** passive Perception 14

**Languages** Westron

**Challenge** 3 (700 XP)

**Hard Eyed.** The Commander is a veteran of many battles and scores a critical hit on rolls of 18, 19 or 20.

**Shield-strike (Recharge 5-6).** If the Commander deals damage with his longsword, he can use his bonus action to slam his great shield into the target. The creature takes 4 points of bludgeoning damage and must make a **DC 13 Strength** saving throw or become Prone.

### Actions

**Multiattack.** The Commander makes two attacks with his longsword.

**Longsword.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +5 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 7 (1d8+3) slashing damage or 8 (1d10+3) slashing damage if used with both hands.

## THE WATER HOUSE

Consciously built in imitation of Esgaroth's Hospital, King Bard was readily convinced by the Master of Lake-town and King Dáin's counsels that a city as big as Dale would have need of a house of healing.

The Water House was built alongside a flowing canal, with several small waterfalls, the gentle sounds of which are thought to aid in the healing of fevered minds. The healers and midwives of the Water House care for those who need it, tending to the old and sick, as well as the

poor. Patients of more means are asked to contribute to the house's coffers. The healers at the Water House have many herbalists in their ranks.

## OLD QUARTER

The eastern part of the city is referred to as the Old Quarter for, long ago, it was the heart of Dale before the coming of Smaug. The vast tracts of stone houses and shops that once made up Dale were reduced to piles of shattered masonry and melted rock by the Dragon. When King Bard and his followers first journeyed to Dale, they found carven stones of great beauty in the Old Quarter, wondrous enough even after two centuries of neglect that the stonemasons of Erebor were impressed, but all were crumbling and overgrown with vines and lichen.

The broken stones of the Old Quarter proved to be useful in the re-building of Dale. Many old foundations were soon put to new uses by the clever masons of the Lonely Mountain. The once-famed fountains of old would never run again, but new ones were built even grander than before. The cunning aqueducts that fed the fountains were repaired and vast improvements were made, to route new channels throughout the city.

The Old Quarter buildings are, in the main, a mixture of old stonework beautifully blended with new. The neighbourhood still has a somewhat dubious reputation, but many folk live and work here untroubled by the district's past.

## Brokenstone

While many folk discredit it, there are some that believe restless spirits of those slain by Smaug haunt parts of the Old Quarter. When the howling winter winds sweep through the city, they say an "unnatural chill" lingers in the Old Quarter and fell cries can be heard on the wind. Many others hold that if there is any curse lingering in

## Staying at the Water House

Heroes that elect to visit this house of healing are able to take a long rest even if they are in the midst of an Adventuring phase. If they are able to stay a week then they can be cured of any of the following conditions: Blinded, Deafened, Frightened, Paralysed, Poisoned, Unconscious. Frequent visitors to the Water House, especially if they're famous adventurers and treasure-seekers, will be asked to donate generously for its services.

the Old Quarter, it was brought there by some of its newer inhabitants.

When King Bard first set about rebuilding Dale, a few of the bullies and snivelling servants of the old Master of Lake-town, hoping to find quick coin or easy prey among the vulnerable, joined in the early efforts. When their machinations fell flat, many faced exile or shame, but few were willing to brave the dangers of Wilderland and most knew they would receive no welcome back in Esgaroth. Helped by the surging new population, they did their best to melt into the shadows, which was easiest in the supposedly haunted remnants of the Old Quarter.

Hard hearts and dark shadows can bear ill fruit. Even as the markets of Dale have once again become famous throughout Wilderland, so the black market of the Old Quarter, known as the Brokenstone, has achieved a dubious fame of its own. Strange and terrible things can be bought or learned in the dusk of the Brokenstone, which isn't a specific place, so much as a series of older cracked courtyards and darkened taverns of ill repute clustered in the south of the Old Quarter.

Many folk believe that the denizens of the Brokenstone have one or more tunnels for smuggling goods directly to and from the river, under the wall, though the City Guard haven't been able to locate one.

The folk of the Brokenstone are, in the main, either paupers or criminals. On dark nights, some are said to slip into the other neighbourhoods of the city to offer their dubious wares, or to seek out easy prey. Those that know of the Brokenstone suggest there may be some truth to the rumour that it is haunted, or submit that the Dragon may indeed have cursed the area; others firmly declare that the denizens of the Brokenstone are tormented far more by their own greed than any fictitious spirits of the dead.

### Snapfire Alley

One of the major thoroughfares of the Old Quarter is the brick paved street called Red Row. It starts just north of the Farmers-market at the edge of the Merchants Quarter and runs in a grand curve along the western side of the Old Quarter, passing by the Market Square before meandering north-easterly. Many building materials and workers regularly pass along the Red Row, but it is an offshoot of the Row that has really made it famous: Snapfire Alley. In a large blind alley filled with brightly painted workshops, the greater bulk of the famed fireworks of Dale are tested and produced.

The fire workers of Dale engage in their delightful, if dangerous, trade here, regularly experimenting with new powders and mixtures in a specially built stone hall that lacks any flammable materials. Bright flares of light and muffled booms are regular occurrences around Snapfire



Alley. The alley is partially encircled by a large ornamental pool as another layer of “defence” should any accidents occur. The art of firework production is a relatively new one and very much a mysterious practice; the fire workers are very careful that only the “right sort” should learn any of their secrets. Free Folk who only wish to entertain and delight others are the types they look for when taking on new apprentices.

## NOTABLE CHARACTERS

### Bard the Dragon-slayer, King of Dale

**"Bard is not lost!" he cried. He dived from Esgaroth, when the enemy was slain. "I am Bard, of the line of Giron; I am the slayer of the Dragon!"**

Long before he wore a crown, Bard was known to his people as a grim but worthy man; stern but forthright in word and deed. Neither the crown nor long years on the throne will change those aspects of his character. He is widely regarded as a good king, not easily swayed by idle politics and ever mindful of the welfare of his people. Being a king does not come readily to the Dragon-slayer, though. He is not particularly fond of the trappings of nobility and accepts many of the more tedious duties of being a monarch with the same stoicism with which he would face an enemy in battle. Improving the lot of his kingdom is often in the forefront of his thoughts. He is smart enough to realise that he is not among the very Wise, but shrewd enough to know a forked tongue when he hears it.

### An Audience with the King

Hard-voiced and frequently of sombre mood, Bard is a proud, practical man, shaped by his former life as a captain. He is widely famed for being true to his word, no matter the personal cost. The Bowman reads hearts well, and is quick to see the worth of an individual. King Bard can most frequently be found in the Royal Palace, though he occasionally wanders the Market Square, with bodyguard in tow. When the crown grows heavy, he leaves the city to hunt on horseback in the lands to the west.

Bard is a tall, imposing man, hale even as the years add increasing amounts of silver to his once black hair, with a sharp glance and a taciturn manner. Only his queen has the knack of getting him to smile regularly.

**Motivation:** I have great ambitions for Dale: to make a kingdom in the North that all may see as a shining example of the Free Peoples' best qualities.

**Expectations:** +1 if the heroes bring important news to King Bard; -3 if they ply him with unwise courtesies or spurious allegations.



### Bard as a Patron

The Bowman concerns himself far more with action than words. Those who accept his patronage are not likely to find themselves at court much. Many of the tasks that Bard will ask of his followers involve furthering his ambitions by advancing the interests of Dale or occasionally by assisting his allies. This will likely see the Company sent into the wild to investigate monstrous threats or lending their weapons to defend a far-flung settlement from raiders. Bard can be made a patron of the Company if they have directly aided him during an Adventuring phase. Characters who have Bard as their patron may choose

the Fellowship phase undertakings Offer Counsel at the King's Court or Join the King's Hunt regardless of normal requirements (see page 54).

### KING BARD Medium Human

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
16 (+3)	20 (+5)	17 (+3)	11 (+0)	15 (+2)	8 (-1)

**Armour Class** 17 (Leather corslet)

**Hit Points** 90 (12d8+36)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Animal Handling +5, Insight +5, Perception +5, Survival +5, Traditions +3

**Senses** passive Perception 15

**Languages** Westron, The Language of Birds

**Challenge** 6 (2,300 XP)

**Disciplined (1/day).** Bard may use his bonus action to grant himself Advantage on all attack rolls this round.

**Eagle-feathered Arrow (1/day).** As a bonus action Bard draws this special arrow and attacks with his Great Bow.

A successful hit causes a critical hit and any creature Medium size or smaller must make a **DC 17 Strength** saving throw or become Prone.

**Hard Eyed.** Bard scores a critical hit on rolls of 18, 19 or 20.

**Hawk's Eye.** Bard may use this ability as a bonus action. He does not suffer Disadvantage on attack rolls due to being at long range this turn.

#### Actions

**Multiattack.** Bard makes three attacks with his great bow.

**Great Bow.** *Ranged Weapon Attack:* +8 to hit, range 150/600 ft, one target. *Hit:* 9 (1d8+5) piercing damage.

egos of nobles than King Bard ever will be. Characters who have consistently shown themselves to act in the interest of Dale will catch her eye, and her recommendations do much to sway the King.

A trusted Company that has Bard as a patron will occasionally be called upon to help the Queen, "with some trifling matter"; which is likely to be far more dangerous and clandestine than anything the Bowman would ask for. Una is one of the great beauties of the Age; dusky skinned, dark eyed, swift to smile and quick to laugh. Her easy going manner swiftly disarms others, but the Queen is every inch a merchant's daughter and her instincts are very shrewd.

**Motivation:** Bard vision is one of future glory for Dale, my view is on the more practical road from here to there.

**Expectations:** +2 if the heroes have completed a mission for her or her family before — she places trust most freely in those who have earned it; +4 if the companions can give accurate, perhaps even unflattering, information about those with power; -3 if the heroes show signs that Dale and King Bard are not their foremost priorities.

### Elstan, First Captain of Dale

Among the first to swear loyalty to King Bard, Elstan is a widely famed, and beloved, warrior. Ever at the forefront of battles and swift to offer aid to beset farmers, Elstan spends almost as much time in the Upper Marches as he does in Dale. Elstan commands the Royal Barracks and sets the example that many of the Royal Archers strive to emulate. Ironically, he's only a passing archer, but he is a master swordsman.

Elstan always keeps an eye out for those he deems to be both "trouble" and "useful sorts". He'll wryly note when asked that they are often one and the same. He occasionally directs companies that he trusts towards, "rumours and such that need looking into".

The First Captain of Dale is a marked contrast to the Dragon-slayer. Where Bard is taciturn, Elstan is garrulous; where Bard is grim, Elstan is frequently cheerful. Elstan is tall, grey eyed and gaunt, resembling nothing so much as an old wolf. He is not a young man any more, but age has not undone him as yet. He wears a bright suit of Dwarven-

### Queen Una the Fair

A merchant princess of Dorwinion, Una captured the heart of King Bard, the folk of Dale and even the neighbouring kingdoms of Erebor and the Woodland Realm in 2948. Una is a spirited woman, whose energy and enthusiasm makes for a stark contrast with her husband. Her outgoing demeanour, gentle wisdom and sharp business instincts complement her grim, socially reticent king, earning her the nickname, "the Dorwinion Gift".

Queen Una works ceaselessly to smooth diplomatic relations at court and is far more eager to meet with trade delegations, negotiate with envoys and sooth the ruffled

mail and carries an ancient shield engraved with potent runes called the Aegis of Dale.

### ELSTAN, FIRST CAPTAIN OF DALE

*Medium Human*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
16 (+3)	11 (+0)	14 (+2)	11 (+0)	11 (+0)	15 (+2)

**Armour Class** 21 (Heavy mail, magical shield)

**Hit Points** 65 (10d8+20)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Saving Throws** Constitution +4, Wisdom +2

**Senses** passive Perception 10

**Languages** Westron

**Challenge** 4 (1,100 XP)

**Aegis of Dale.** Elstan bears a magical shield forged in Erebor for the protection of the new kingdom. While he bears it, he has Advantage on death saving throws and can use his bonus action to gain 10 temporary hit points.

#### Actions

**Multiattack.** Elstan makes two longsword attacks.

**Longsword (Bitter Birthright).** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +7 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 9 (1d8+5) piercing damage.

#### Reactions

**Commanding Voice.** Elstan may use his reaction to utter a command when a non-hostile creature he can see within 30 ft is about to make an attack roll or a saving throw. The target adds a d6 Command Die to that roll, provided it can understand the message. A creature can benefit from only one Command Die at a time, and creatures that possess Commanding Voice cannot benefit.

**Parry.** Elstan adds 2 to his AC against one melee attack that would hit him. He must be aware of the incoming attack in order to parry.

### Brindal, Enterprising Thief

Though the people of Dale are widely thought to be true and noble, not all aspire to honourable lives. Brindal is a young woman who lost much when Lake-town burned. Barely fifteen when the fires claimed her family, she followed many of her people to find a new home in Dale. Bitterness crept into her heart as riches finally began to flow into the city, but only a little silver found its way to her.

Now, Brindal seeks to fill the emptiness left by the loss of her family and all she held dear with hoarded gold. She leads a small band of thieves based out of the Brokenstone

who regularly ply the streets of Dale, picking the pockets of idle shoppers and keeping an ear out for useful secrets she can parley to interested parties. She has begun to hold Bardings in contempt, and the darkness of her spirit deepens with every season.

Brindal is a sinewy young woman in her twenties, with light brown hair, and a hard green gaze that resembles nothing so much as a lizard's. She speaks in short, terse sentences, and always keeps an eye on the nearest exit.

### BRINDAL

*Medium Human*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
12 (+1)	18 (+4)	13 (+1)	14 (+2)	11 (+0)	15 (+2)

**Armour Class** 16 (Leather corslet)

**Hit Points** 33 (6d8+6)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Sleight of Hand +8, Stealth +8

**Senses** passive Perception 10

**Languages** Westron

**Challenge** 2 (450 XP)

**Expert.** Brindal doubles her Proficiency Bonus for **Sleight of Hand** and **Stealth**.

**Nimble Escape.** Brindal can take the Disengage or Hide action as a bonus action on each of her turns.

**Sneak Attack.** Once per turn, Brindal deals an extra 3 (1d6) damage when she hits a target with a weapon attack and has Advantage on the attack roll, or when the target is within 5 ft of an ally of Brindal that isn't Incapacitated and she doesn't have Disadvantage on the attack roll.

#### Actions

**Short Sword.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 7 (1d6+4) piercing damage

#### Reactions

**Snake-like Speed (Recharge 5-6).** Brindal is adept at avoiding injury and can use her reaction to halve the attack damage on an attack that she is aware of.



## THINGS TO DO WHILE IN DALE

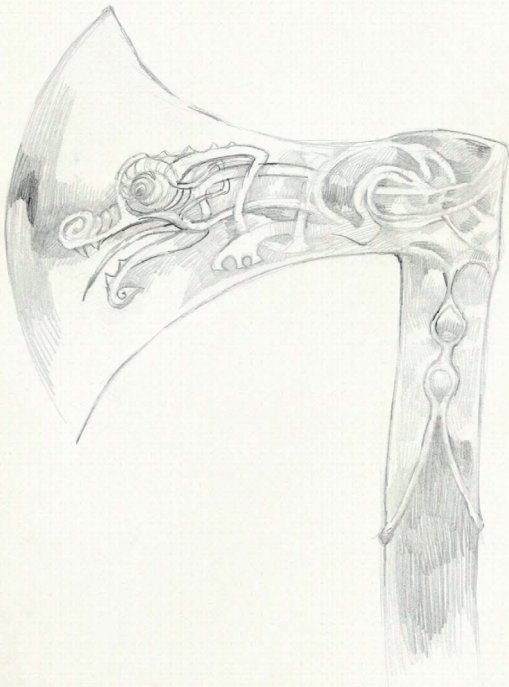
The city of Dale grows with each season as trade flourishes and the Northmen who once lived in fear in the time of Smaug flock to its gates. While traffic across Wilderland slows down in the winter as the weather turns chill, the Market Square remains busy all year round. There is always a new treasure to be found amidst the tents and stalls of the city, if one only looks hard enough.

### NEW FELLOWSHIP PHASE UNDERTAKINGS

Here follows several new undertakings that can be chosen by companions spending a Fellowship phase in Dale.

#### Commission a Smith of Anvil Way

A hero with gold to spare can contract the services of a master smith of Anvil Way, to customise a weapon, or purchase a new dwarf-forged weapon or suit of armour.



#### Customised in Anvil Way

A hero can hire a master smith to modify an existing weapon, instead of forging a new one. The standard fee for this begins at 5 gold pieces, but the companion can attempt a **DC 15 Charisma (Persuasion)** check to reduce this fee – no special discounts for Dwarves.

- If the hero fails the check then he spends too much time haggling only to find that there is no smith willing to work for his parsimonious rates. The phase is wasted.
- If the hero succeeds at the check then she has managed to haggle a smith down to 4g, or 3g if she succeeded by 5 or more.

Throughout the Fellowship phase the smith calls upon the hero to come and test the grip on the sword, watches while they hack a target to pieces or takes notes as he has the hero leap about his workshop. At the start of the following Adventuring phase, the smith presents the hero with a gleaming piece of Dwarven forge-work specifically modified to fit them.

- Once per round when the hero has failed an attack roll, you can use your reaction to reroll the attack.

#### Dwarf-forged Wargear

The master smiths of Anvil Way are well-suited to providing Dwarf-forged weapons and armour (see page 152 of the *Player's Guide*). A hero can spend a Fellowship phase purchasing such a piece of equipment, usually receiving just before the beginning of the next Adventuring phase.

#### Join the King's Hunt

Before he became known as the Dragon-slayer, King Bard was known simply as the Bowman; from those days he still has a deep love of the hunt. To relax from the stresses of his kingly duties, he occasionally journeys with a company of other skilled hunters into the Dalelands in search of game. It is a high honour to be invited to join the King on one of his excursions.

A character spending the Fellowship phase in Dale may choose this undertaking to join King Bard on his jaunts. The hero gains a deeper understanding of the wilds surrounding Dale and has Advantage on any skill checks required if they serve as Hunter during a journey that takes them through the Northern Dalelands or the Upper Marches.

#### Offer Counsel at the Royal Court

King Bard is not a man who chooses to rule by his will alone. He regularly seeks the wisdom of worldly folks from both within his borders and beyond. Though this practice is regarded with deep suspicion by some of the more

conservative among Dale's old noble lines, Bard pays them little mind, for he knows the strength of his realm is bound with cooperation between the Free Folk of Wilderland.

A hero spending the Fellowship phase in Dale may choose this undertaking to spend time at the Royal Palace and share their insight with his court. This undertaking may only be selected by Barding characters or heroes with the title of Thegn having a Proficiency Bonus of +4 or higher or any character with a Proficiency Bonus of +5 or higher.

By spending the Fellowship phase sitting in council with the King and his advisors, the hero earns the admiration of the people of Dale. The hero has Advantage on any Introduction checks done with Bardings the next year.

### Stay at The Missing Scale

Mere steps away from the flow of the Market Square, all manner of folk find their way to seats at *The Missing Scale*. It is a tavern where local news from one street over is exchanged for tales from distant lands; where a soiled farmer from the north can rub elbows with a Dwarven miner from the Iron Hills, a wealthy merchant prince from Dorwinion or a Beorning trader from west of Mirkwood.

A companion spending a Fellowship phase in Dale may choose this undertaking and make a **DC 13 Charisma (Persuasion)** check. On a success, the hero wins 1 Rumour die, succeeding by 5 or more earns 2 Rumour dice and a natural 20 means 3 Rumour dice. A Rumour die is a d4 and it can be added to any appropriate (**History, Lore, Riddle, Shadow-lore**) skill checks. Once a Rumour die is used, it is lost. Unused Rumour dice expire at the end of the Adventuring phase.

**Take Apprenticeship with a Dwarven Smith**  
**"Fathers would beg us to take their sons as apprentices, and pay us handsomely..."**

The Dwarven smiths of Anvil Way are not idle in the winter months. They warm their hearts along with their hands at the forge, dedicated to crafting new and wondrous treasures. Many Bardings seek apprenticeship with these master smiths, hoping to learn but a fragment of their skill. Such an education does not come cheaply.

A character with a Proficiency Bonus of at least +3 (for the Dwarves will not suffer a completely inept student) who spends the Fellowship phase in Dale or Erebor may seek an apprenticeship with a Dwarven smith. The would-be apprentice must then make a **DC 15 Intelligence (Traditions)** check to convince a Dwarven smith to take them on.

On any level of success, the character must pay 5 gold pieces or the equivalent. On a failure, they have to pay 10g. On a natural 1 they enrage the smith, who swiftly spreads the word to his fellows of the character's flaws, and there is no apprenticeship to be had for any price.

In return for a small fortune and a Fellowship phase spent working ceaselessly at a forge under a gruff taskmaster, the character can apply the lessons they learn to excel at the smith's arts. From now on, they are considered proficient with smith's tools.

If they were already proficient they instead double their Proficiency Bonus for any checks made with smith's tools during the next Adventuring phase.

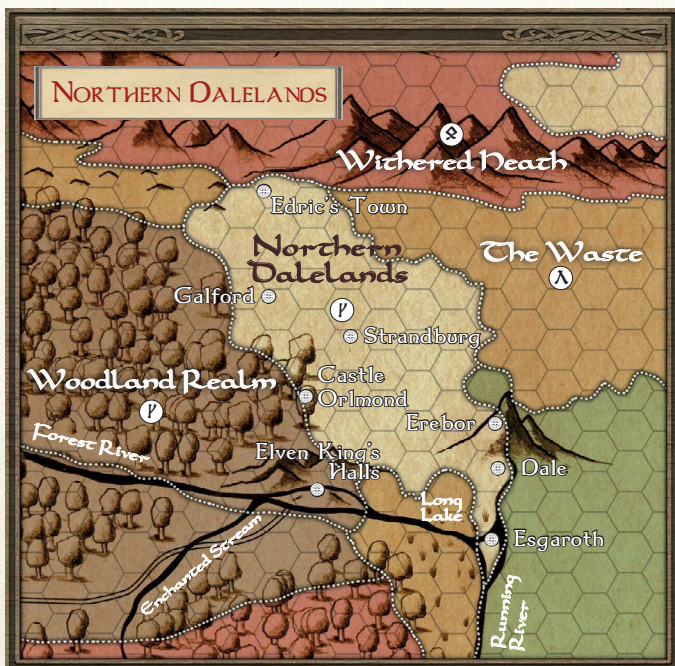


# the lands about - the mountain -

From the peak of Erebor, one can see for many leagues. And most of that land is once again being tamed by Men and Dwarves. Only deep Mirkwood and the farthest reaches of the Waste have yet to feel the bite of plough or axe, but even the most civilised lands are not free from danger.

## THE NORTHERN DALELANDS

From the Withered Heath in the north to the southern lands where the River Running meets the Redwater there were once villages and towns loyal to the House of Girion. No land grew more prosperous under his rule than the Northern Dalelands, the fertile land north-west of Dale. Long fields of rich soil gave plenty to those who tended the land, and the only shadow upon the land was that which came with the setting sun.



When the Dragon made his lair in the Lonely Mountain, however, the Dalelands became known as the Desolation of Smaug. The land became bleak and barren, the soil

tainted; only a little grass endured and bush and tree were reduced to broken and blackened stumps. All around the Mountain was silence, as though the birds and insects were afraid to wake the Dragon.

With the death of Smaug, however, the land has begun to heal. Bird-song fills the skies once more and the land has burst into new life. Green grasses and fields of vibrant flowers surround the Lonely Mountain anew. Songbirds nest in the thickets and game has returned to the rolling fields.

Bardings, too, have returned to the Dalelands. Newly built farms and villages are springing up everywhere, and golden fields of corn have been sown. This is the heart of the Kingdom of Dale, and it is these lands that King Bard has gifted to his most loyal of retainers.

**Combat Scenery:** gentle slopes, lone trees or boulders, moorland heather, root-covered walls, streams, thickets

## WILDLIFE

The Northern Dalelands are verdant once again, teeming with life. Rolling hills covered in swaying grasses and beds of heather and poppy are only broken by the occasional copse of trees or cairn of rock.

Thrushes, chats and starlings nest throughout the hills, their songs filling the air. Small falcons knife their way through the sky; hobbies, merlins and peregrines. Ravens from the Lonely Mountain occasionally flap over the land, looking out for anything that might be of interest to their Dwarf-friends.

Game is easily found here and those who are keen with a bow find meat to be a regular meal, whether hare, stag or boar. It is only in the far north, where the land falls under the shadow of the Grey Mountains, that wolves are encountered, gaunt grey killers that come down seeking to prey on lonely travellers or isolated farms.

## INHABITANTS

During the reign of Smaug, only a handful of Men dwelt in the Northern Dalelands. But in the past few years, life has returned to the land – and with it the Bardings themselves. Each year they return in ever greater numbers, flourishing under King Bard.



The hills are dotted with great tracts of tilled earth and simple farmsteads of fresh timber. Between these steadings are trade posts, inns, watchtowers and the mansions of nobles and courtiers out of Dale. These nobles are descended from older lines, loyal merchants from Esgaroth or newly raised warriors who fought at Bard's side during the Battle of Five Armies. As a reward for their loyalty they were gifted with parcels of land throughout the Dalelands, where they govern in Bard's name.

Whilst grass and crops grow now in the Dalelands, it is too soon for newly planted trees to be harvested for wood. Instead, those villages founded near to the borders of Mirkwood look to the Woodland Realm for timber, and their unwelcome felling is the source of increasing tension between the Elves and Bardings.

## NOTABLE CHARACTERS

### Bryni, Lord of Strandburg

Like many nobles who dwell in the Northern Dalelands, Bryni came here when King Bard first encouraged his people to restore the land. Bryni was young and eager then, not yet twenty when he came to the ruined village of Strandburg. He had little claim to rulership beyond a distant ancestor who had owned a handful of farms here,

but Bryni held to the hope of brighter days to come and in the first year of his rule he was a goodly lord who stood shoulder to shoulder with those who had followed him.

But when plenty became the law of his land, Bryni grew idle. His village of Strandburg flourishes in the very heart of the Northern Dalelands, far from dust of the Waste or the eaves of Mirkwood. He instead concerns himself with long winter feasts, the finest fashions for his wife, and the latest trophies of the hunt. In short, Lord Bryni has grown arrogant in his manor and deaf to the concerns of his people. With each passing season the fortunes of the people of Strandburg diminish ever so slightly and the troubles of far off lands draw closer. Though Bryni turns a blind eye to these shadows and waves away the concerns of his people with a smile, there may come a time when his mettle is finally tested.

Even if he does not act like the hero he aspires to be, Bryni certainly resembles one; long flowing dark hair, a proud, lordly gaze and a habit for wearing shining mail and red cloaks even when not dressing for battle.

**Motivation:** Is it not true that those of us with noble blood must set an example for the lesser folk? They see my fine things and know that hard labour can win a worthy living.



**Expectations:** +2 if the Company brings gifts worthy of a lord of Bryni's station; -3 if they insist that he must act against the Shadow; -1 if the heroes presume to lecture him on the true duties of a lord.

### LORD BRYNI

*Medium Human*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
17 (+3)	14 (+2)	13 (+1)	16 (+3)	11 (+0)	18 (+4)

**Armour Class** 18 (Heavy mail, Shield)

**Hit Points** 71 (13d8+13)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Animal Handling +2, History +5, Persuasion +6, Survival +2

**Senses** passive Perception 10

**Languages** Westron

**Challenge** 3 (700 XP)

**Iron Will.** Bryni is haughty and his heart has grown cold. If the heroes have accrued any negative modifiers in an audience with him, the Final Audience check is made with Disadvantage.

**Savage Assault.** When Bryni rolls a natural 18 or 19, he may, as a bonus action, make a single additional melee attack against the same opponent.

#### Actions

**Multiattack.** Bryni makes two attacks with his long sword.

**Long Sword.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +5 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 7 (1d8+3) slashing damage or 8 (1d10+3) slashing damage if used with two hands.

The Men of the Black Arrow stir up trouble throughout the Dalelands. They bully farmers and villagers, harass travellers and traders and demand recompense from nobles for their 'help'. While the Black Arrow has been responsible for several victories against Goblins and wolves out of the Grey Mountains, and lawless bands of brigands, Bard regards them as menaces and lawbreakers. But they see themselves as heroes and protectors of the common folk, who take action while the nobles sit idly in their manors. Garrick himself is a short, furrow-browed man with little time to bandy words with civilised folk. He is eager to whet his weapons with the blood of those who threaten the land.

### GARRICK

*Medium Human*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
13 (+1)	19 (+4)	15 (+2)	13 (+1)	12 (+1)	20 (+5)

**Armour Class** 16 (Leather corslet)

**Hit Points** 65 (10d8+20)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Sleight of Hand +6, Stealth +6, Survival +3

**Senses** passive Perception 11

**Languages** Westron

**Challenge** 2 (450 XP)

**Bodyguards.** Garrick is always surrounded by Thugs and Outlaws whose duty it is to protect their leader. At least one Thug or Outlaw in his retinue gains the Thrall (Garrick) special reaction ability (see below).

**Nimble Escape.** Garrick can take the Disengage or Hide action as a bonus action on each of his turns.

#### Actions

**Broadsword.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 8 (1d8+4) slashing damage.

**Great Bow.** *Ranged Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, range 150/600 ft, one target. *Hit:* 8 (1d8+4) piercing damage.

## Garrick of the Black Arrow

Not all who dwell in the Northern Dalelands wish to live under the rule of King Bard. There is a small company of men who have named themselves for the famed shaft that slew Smaug and would see that no such shadow ever returns to trouble their land: the Black Arrow. Led by Garrick, a former guard of Dale, they regularly patrol the borders of the land looking for signs of the shadow. While their purpose is noble, they are regarded by many to be troublemakers, ruffians and vigilantes.

Men of the Black Arrow hold themselves to no law and kneel before no lord. Garrick himself has said that no words shall bind his company, save a direct decree by King Bard himself.

## Thrall (Other Creature)

This creature is a slave of another creature, known as its master. If the master is within the creature's movement speed, the creature can use its reaction to become the target of an attack that would have hit its master. If the master is slain, the creature flees the battlefield.

## NOTABLE PLACES

### Castle Orlmund

Orlmund is a lord out of Dale, gifted with a parcel of land north of the River Running, and the wealth to make of it what he will. And what he has made is a mighty castle, by the standards of the Men of North, with Dwarf wrought gates and high towers.

Unlike the ruined watchtowers that dot the Grey Mountain Narrows, Castle Orlmund is a new fortification, built atop a steep-sided hill with views across the Dalelands on one side, and to the nearby borders of Mirkwood on the other. Some thirty warriors stand guard here, and an increasing number of cottagers and foresters have settled nearby, comforted by the security of the keep.

(More about Castle Orlmund – and the disposition of its lord – can be found in *Mirkwood Campaign*, page 111.)

### Edric's Town

The northernmost village in the Northern Dalelands, Edric's Town is unusual in that it draws most of its resources by mining along the edge of the Withered Heath. Edric's Town boasts two mines, apparently rich in gold and gems, as well as a quarry.

The people of Edric's Town, though, pay for their new prosperity with toil and blood. Dwelling beneath the shadow of the grim peaks of the Grey Mountains, far too close to the Withered Heath, the villagers struggle against long, cold winters and fearsome beasts, which often stalk down from the north in search of easy prey. Unlike the majority of the other villages of the Northern Dalelands, the houses of Edric's Town are built from stone. The town is surrounded by a large palisade of high wooden stakes set between squat towers, and there is talk that the Dwarves of Erebor may assist in building a new wall.

Lady Sara, widow of the late eccentric Lord Edric, rules the village. Though strong and fierce in her own right, she has seen the troubles of her people grow heavier with every season. Thick snows bury the village each winter and they are regularly beset by wolves and even worse creatures. Her people dwindle in number each year, and despite the promise of wealth, few seem willing to replace them, for what use is money to the dead? Some say that a sterner

lord is needed in such a place and that the Lady of Edric's Town is not fit to rule. Travelling merchants whisper that talk of rebellion is quietly spreading, adding yet another sorrow amidst a sea of them.

### Galford

With the return of prosperity to Dale and Erebor, traders are once again taking to the old merchant roads that cross Wilderland. While it is the most direct path, Mirkwood also remains the most dangerous, causing many merchants to look elsewhere. The old trading road that runs the length of the Grey Mountain Narrows and passes through the Northern Dalelands on its way to the Lonely Mountain is seeing more traffic than it has in generations.

While many Northmen left their meagre farms and halls behind to heed the Dragon-slayer's offer of opportunities elsewhere, a few saw the advantages in staying. Galford is a growing village set on the trader's path a day's journey south-east of the Narrows' eastern gap, centred on a new traveller's inn called *The Lantern*. Named for the wondrous Dwarven brass lamp that swings from its front porch, the innkeeper Vali converted his former farmstead into *The Lantern* to cater to the merchants and other travellers that had begun to regularly ask if they could stay in his barns.



Vali's decision has proved to be a fortuitous one, for in the few years it has been open, *The Lantern* has already become a great success. Unlike many other settlers in the area, Vali wisely approached emissaries of the Elvenking in Lake-town before improving *The Lantern* (or the village) as Galford sits along the eastern eaves of Mirkwood. While Thranduil's folk made no promises of protection, they've allowed Vali to use fallen wood from the forest in his ongoing constructions, a rare privilege.

## THE WASTE

Directly to the north and east of Erebor lies the trackless, ash-choked desert known as the Waste. The Waste spans over one hundred and fifty miles from the eastern edge of the Northern Dalelands to the Iron Hills, bordered to the north by the Lower Fork of the Grey Mountains, and beyond the Withered Heath.

It is a broken, tumbled land of twisted stone, cracked earth and strange piles of rock melted into unnatural shapes, the Waste barely supports life, and even then only of the most desperate and ruthless kind. Stony tors made of sharp rocks can shred a climber's hands to ribbons, while even the most seasoned guide can find themselves hopelessly lost in one of many blind canyons.



The rare potable water found in the Waste is either a rancid-smelling brown or reeks of sulphur. Better by far the water holes with a rotten stench, though, than the waters that have no smell, for these are invariably poisonous. The soil has become a mixture of ash, silt and sand in which nothing wholesome grows. The only plant-life found in the Waste are various types of thorny bracken that are poisonous to animals and exude oils that irritate the skin, along with strange weeds that cling to the underside of misshapen boulders.

The fierce winds that constantly blow from the north are somewhat lessened by the Grey Mountains, which helps to blunt their wrath, but terrible dust storms are still a bane to those travelling on the Waste.

The western part of the Waste and the Northern Dalelands beyond are shielded by two mountain spurs, but the eastern part has little shelter from the biting cold. Piercing winds tear at the skin and reduce visibility to a feeble stone's throw at best. Lucky travellers may find a suitably deep box gully or a rocky overhang, but there are no guarantees of shelter.

While it could be argued that the Wastes belong to either the Kingdom of Dale or Erebor, neither King Bard nor King Dáin is interested in trying to reclaim them. The Dragon's corruption lingers too strongly here and there are fertile lands to the south to be had with far less effort.

**Combat Scenery:** briar patches, dust, eerie atmosphere, lone trees or boulders, poisonous fumes, rock edges, strong wind

### WILDLIFE

There is little life in the Waste, and what few creatures live here hide beneath stony outcroppings during the day. Large, droning beetles make their homes near rancid pools of water. Small, poisonous snakes slither between the rocks. Most commonly seen are clouds of fat, buzzing blue-grey flies; travellers who attract these flies inevitably find their stores infested soon after by small, grey maggots unlike any found elsewhere. In all ways the Waste is unwholesome and tainted.

### INHABITANTS

The Waste has always been an empty land, and no one makes their home here permanently. Those Men who do live there now are bandits or exiles, one and all. Some were banished from Dale. Others are opportunistic thieves who have fled to the Waste, correctly reckoning that none would wish to follow them.

The already perilous lives of these miscreants have grown worse during the last few years, for particularly wretched Orcs and Goblins fled north here after the Battle of Five Armies. The desperate survivors of that battle are particularly ruthless and cunning, even for Orcs.

## NOTABLE CHARACTERS

### Witherfinger

The haggard old creature known as Witherfinger is described in *Wilderland Adventures*, page 130.

### Hakon, Barding Noble

While change may be the course of the world, it is difficult for some folk to bear, especially those who were content with how things were. Such is the way with Hakon, once a powerful merchant of Esgaroth, now a courtier of Dale. Hakon's family directly descends from the noble bloodlines of Dale.

In Lake-town of old, Hakon wielded an enormous amount of influence due to both his family line and his wealth. Hakon frequently used his power to further his own interests at the expense of others and was seldom secretive about it.

When Smaug crashed down onto Esgaroth, most of Hakon's treasury sunk to the bottom of the Long Lake. With his wealth gone, Hakon decided that his best chance for repairing his fortunes was to support King Bard. Though his words of gratitude were ashes in his mouth, he pledged all that he had to help Bard's cause. Unfortunately for Hakon, several of Bard's loyal followers

have long memories. While Bard gratefully accepted Hakon's backing, he has been careful to keep him at arm's length.

Hakon is now a bitter man whose authority is but a shadow of what it once was. While he has slowly rebuilt his wealth, it is meagre compared to that which he once possessed; Hakon has decided to take matters into his own hands. While he has many schemes afoot, he is currently recruiting exiles – and worse – from the Waste who won't shirk at “unpleasant” orders. Those who can go unrecognised by the townsfolk, he employs in Dale, the rest he has set to work at his holdings in the Upper Marches. In his late forties with long, grey hair, Hakon dresses in what finery he can still afford and plays the part of the loyal courtier; but while he smiles freely, his eyes betray nothing but contempt.

**Motivation:** Only by valour and force can the North be free – diplomacy and contrition are but ways for our enemies to worm their way into our hearts.

**Expectations:** +1 if the Company are the sort who prefer problems that can be solved with quick and decisive sword-work; +2 if they are mostly Men-folk (Hakon has little trust for Dwarves or Elves); -2 if they seem the type to ask too many questions and poke into dark corners.



## LORD HAKON

Medium Human

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
15 (+2)	12 (+1)	14 (+2)	17 (+3)	13 (+1)	16 (+3)

**Armour Class** 18 (Corslet of Mail, Great Shield)

**Hit Points** 97 (15d8+30)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Deception +9, Insight +7, Perception +7, Traditions +9

**Senses** passive Perception 17

**Languages** Westron

**Challenge** 6 (2,300 XP)

**Expert.** Hakon doubles his Proficiency Bonus for his skills (included above).

**Twisted Words.** Lord Hakon is never far from his own followers and even commands the respect (so far) of the City Guard. If attacked in a public place, he can spend his bonus action to summon appropriate aid, which arrives at the end of his next turn. Slaying those who believe they're saving Hakon from banditry is a Misdeed worthy of several Shadow points.

### Actions

**Multiattack.** Hakon makes three attacks with his sword.

**Long Sword.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +5 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 6 (1d8+2) slashing damage or 7 (1d10+2) slashing damage if wielded with two hands.

### Reactions

**Counterattack (Recharge 5-6).** If an attack roll misses Hakon, he can use his reaction to make an attack roll with Advantage. He must be wielding a melee weapon and able to see his attacker.

**Uncanny Dodge.** If Hakon can see an attacker that has struck him, he may use his reaction to halve that attack's damage.

## Rugash the Serpent, Orc-Chieftain

Rugash is not at all a typical Orc leader, which is in large part what has made his tribe so very successful on the Waste. When Rugash travelled to the Battle of Five Armies, he was neither the strongest nor the most skilled among his folk. He was cunning and, rare for an Orc, subtle. He knew what to say around which commander in order to direct events as he wished.

For many long years, he was content to remain in the background, letting others endure the constant challenges and backstabs that most Orc leaders regularly face. It was

not defeat at the Battle of the Five Armies that changed Rugash's lot though; it was the aftermath.

Rugash, having already seen which way the battle was going, slipped north before the rout. He had already planned his escape, finding a suitably well-hidden gully to hide in. His foresight was rewarded when the Eagles killed those of his fellows who were caught in the open as they fled. As the surviving Orcs and Goblins gathered into bands, Rugash fell in with a group led by a great loud intent on taking immediate revenge against the Dwarves. Rugash casually poisoned him and took charge.

## RUGASH THE SERPENT

Medium humanoid (orc-kind)

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
13 (+1)	18 (+4)	15 (+2)	16 (+3)	14 (+2)	11 (+0)

**Armour Class** 15 (Orcish leathers)

**Hit Points** 52 (8d8+16)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Saving Throws** Constitution +4, Wisdom +3

**Skills** Insight +4, Perception +4, Stealth +6

**Senses** darkvision 60 ft, passive Perception 14

**Languages** Orcish, Westron

**Challenge** 3 (700 XP)

**Stealthy.** Rugash may use his bonus action each round to Hide.

**Sunlight Sensitivity.** While in sunlight, Rugash has disadvantage on attack rolls, as well as on Wisdom (Perception) checks that rely on sight.

### Actions

**Multiattack.** Rugash makes two attacks with his scimitar or his whip.

**Orcish Scimitar.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 9 (2d4+4) slashing damage. Two-handed.

**Whip.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +4 to hit, reach 10 ft, one target. *Hit:* 4 (1d4+2) slashing damage.

**Call for Aid.** Rugash always keeps a few of his lads back in case of trouble. He can use his action to summon them. 2d4 Orc Soldiers arrive in 1d4+1 rounds. If Rugash is slain before they arrive, they will likely avoid the Company unless the Loremaster deems otherwise.

### Reactions

**Parry.** Rugash adds 2 to his AC against one melee attack that would hit him. To do so, he must see the attacker and be wielding a melee weapon.

Rugash's approach has succeeded in the Waste, where cunning generally counts more than strength. His tribe is as elusive as creeping shadows, moving their camp often, and oftentimes striking during a dust storm. It was his warriors who named him "the Serpent" a sobriquet he bears with pride. After his long string of successes, Rugash's ambitions have grown. Even now his scouts carefully explore choice targets along the eastern edge of the Dalelands in preparation for raids to come.



## Erna

Smaug reduced Erna's old life in Lake-town to ashes: home, husband, and children, all gone in an instant. In the dark days that followed the destruction of Esgaroth, Erna was numb, doing what little was asked of her by her fellow survivors, but little else. When she finally woke from her grief, long months later, the numbness has passed; in its place, rage.

Beyond all things, Erna desires revenge, but she knows that her vengeance can never be anything but bittersweet and hollow, for her true target is dead. Still, there are other worms in the world, other drakes to slay. Erna soon found hunters to teach her their craft and they found her an ardent pupil. Erna now stalks the Waste, her blonde hair and fair face at odds with its stern expression. There she seeks out traces of any worm's lair she can find. Folk that knew the quiet apothecary's wife of old would not recognise her in the driven hunter she has become. She is not much for speech any more, but will help Free Folk in need, directing them to drinkable water and warning them away from some of the more dangerous areas of the Waste.

## ERNA Medium Human

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
18 (+4)	13 (+1)	13 (+1)	15 (+2)	14 (+2)	10 (+0)

**Armour Class** 14 (Unarmoured Defence, Shield)

**Hit Points** 49 (9d8+9)

**Speed** 40 ft

**Skills** Athletics +6, Nature +4, Lore +4, Survival +4

**Senses** passive Perception 12

**Languages** Westron

**Challenge** 3 (700 XP)

**Battle-fury.** Erna can use her bonus action to enter a Fury. While in this state, she has Advantage on Strength checks and saving throws, gains +4 damage to her attacks and has resistance to non-magical bludgeoning, piercing and slashing damage. It ends after 1 minute or if she is Unconscious, or ends her turn without having attacked a hostile creature or taken damage since her previous turn.

**Dragon-touched.** Erna has Advantage on any saving throws caused by Dragons. Any Intelligence (Lore) checks that she makes about Dragons are at Advantage as well.

**Reckless.** Erna may choose to gain Advantage on all attacks she makes in a round, but all attacks on her gain Advantage until the start of her next turn.

**Region-lore (The Waste).** If Erna is with the Company for a journey that begins or ends in the Waste, the Guide rolls 1d8+4 for the Embarkation Roll.

### Actions

**Multiattack.** Erna makes two attacks with her spear or great bow.

**Spear.** *Melee or Ranged Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, reach 5 ft or range 20/60 ft, one target. *Hit:* 7 (1d6+4) piercing damage or 8 (1d8+4) piercing damage if used with two hands to make a melee attack.

**Great Bow.** *Ranged Weapon Attack:* +3 to hit, range 150/600 ft, one target. *Hit:* 5 (1d8+1) piercing damage.

## NOTABLE PLACES

### A Chill and Windswept Grave

Some fifty miles to the north of Erebor is a desolate collection of rocks that surround one of the few pools of drinkable water in the area. At times, the wind blows especially hard through the upturned stones, causing a low moaning sound to resonate from them which carries for many miles over the Waste. This is the final resting place of the old Master of Esgaroth's bones.

King Bard gave him a great deal of gold to help rebuild Lake-town anew, but he fell prey to the corruption of the hoard, to the Dragon-sickness, and fled into the Waste with a handful of accomplices. They betrayed him, or he them, and in the end, he died alone of starvation for one cannot eat gold or precious stones. This is a tale well known in Dale.

Some folk have claimed to have met the spirit of the Master wandering the Waste; a middle-aged Northman, dressed in tattered robes that blow in a wind no one else can feel. Chained by his greed or his guilt, he lingers still. It may be possible to seek the Master's counsel, for he knew much that is now lost with Lake-town. His price would doubtless be something that would help him find rest: perhaps digging up the last of his treasure and returning it to the folk of Lake-town?

While much of the Master's wealth was lost or stolen, he managed to keep some of his ill-gotten gold till his end. A Company that finds his grave, seeks diligently among the rocks, and succeeds in a **DC 20 Intelligence (Investigation)** check will find the last of the Master's fortune. It is worth Treasure 40\*, but taking any of it automatically causes a hero to gain 1 Shadow point; 2 Shadow points if they do not intend to give it away.

### Cold-drake Burrows

Along the northern edges of the Waste there is a series of particularly large tors topping the foothills that lead upwards towards the Grey Mountains. Some of these stony crags have curious holes beneath them, usually carved from out the lower portions of the hill. Few that wander the Waste could be called "wise", but only the greatest fools venture here, for some of these openings lead to the burrows of young Cold-drakes.

Competition for food among the few remaining Dragons is fierce on the Withered Heath, for there is little left to eat for a young drake save their peers. Even in older times, the youngest drakes would sometimes flee the Withered Heath to find a safer place to sleep. With the Grey Mountains too close to the Heath for comfort, they would wander down onto the plains beyond and there make or steal a new lair.

In their snug burrows the young Cold-drakes dream the strange dreams of their kind. There are few left now and most of them cannot be readily roused, though the scent of a favoured food – Dwarf for instance – may draw the interest of one or more of them. Though young by the standards of Dragons, they are only a little less perilous for that.

### Grimarr's Hall

Near the eastern borders of the Waste lies a grand hall, corroded by time and scorched by Dragon-fire, but still standing. This is the Hall of Grimarr, the last Border warden of Dale. When Smaug descended from the north, the Kingdom of Dale did not fall all at once. Grimarr learned of Erebor's doom from Dwarves fleeing to the Iron Hills, and he sent his men to help bring as many Dwarves east as he could, while making preparations for the coming of the Dragon.

Smaug took many years despoiling the lands around his lair; it was not until three years after the sacking of Erebor that he first noticed the fortified hall on what he deemed the edge of his domain, sniffing out gold kept within its vaults.

Grimarr had long since sent many of his men west and south, keeping only his eldest warriors who were prepared to give their lives to stop the Dragon. They failed, not one living to tell the tale – but it was a long count of years after his attack on the Hall of Grimarr before Smaug was seen again.

While it is broken and scorched in part, Grimarr's Hall remains a rare beauty in all the Waste. Small wildflowers grow around the edges of sparse grass clumps and ravens from the Iron Hills sometimes rest within the rafters before setting out on overland journeys to Erebor.

Those in Dale these days that remember the legendary courage of the Last Border-warden believe some valuable relics of Dale's history might still remain hidden within his Hall. Companies that stay within Grimarr's Hall need not make Corruption checks against the taint caused by the Waste and can take a long rest as if they were in a sanctuary.



## THE GREY MOUNTAINS

Looking north from the slopes of Erebor, beyond the Waste, one can easily discern the jagged line of the easternmost branch of the Ered Mithrin – the Grey Mountains – stretching along the horizon. These imposing peaks have long held the imagination of the Dwarves and once drove them to near ruin, for although they are rich in ore, deep within the Grey Mountains lies the desolate plateau known as the Withered Heath, birthplace of Dragons, the bane of many a Dwarf-hold. It was from the Withered Heath that Smaug the Golden came, and there are many that yet believe Durin's folk have not seen the last of his scaly kind.

The Grey Mountains form a near-impassable border beginning at Mount Gundabad in the west and stretching well over a hundred leagues to the east. The peaks rise gradually but surely from the western end of the range, with the tallest mountains found in the Western Heights and the Southern Spur, which stabs southwards towards Mirkwood.

From the Western Heights the mountains close ranks, paths and passes giving way to sheer rockfaces; this is the Wall, and not even the cold winds from the north can penetrate it.

East of the Wall the Grey Mountains subside somewhat, the peaks lessening in height and canyons and other passes winding beneath them. Here the range splits in two – the Upper and Lower Forks of the Grey Mountains – and

it is in the plateau between the Forks that the Withered Heath nestles. The Forks gradually peter out at their eastern ends, giving way to the foothills of the Waste.

Along much of its length, the southern foothills separate the Grey Mountains from Mirkwood, making a long ribbon of land called the Grey Mountain Narrows. In places the Narrows are as much as twenty or thirty miles wide, but at either end mountain and forest nearly meet at the East and West Gaps. (More about the Grey Mountain Narrows can be found in the *Rhovanion Region Guide*, page 19.)

The dreary heights of the Grey Mountains give birth to many powerful rivers; the source of both the Greylin and the Langwell (which thirty miles south of the mountains meet to form the Anduin), and the Forest River that flows through Mirkwood, are to be found here.

The Ered Mithrin is mainly formed of hard, unyielding rock, a great deal of granite traced through with limestone, along with iron in abundance and a fair variety of gemstones. As a result the Dwarves built many holds here and delved many mines; all lie abandoned now, the Grey Dwarves themselves driven out by Orcs, Goblins and Dragons centuries ago.

**Combat Scenery:** cliffs, crags, fallen trees, ravines, rock edges, scattered scree (rocks), steep slopes

### WILDLIFE

The Grey Mountains have never been a hospitable range and few but the hardest creatures make their home in



the heights. A breed of sturdy mountain goats introduced by the Dwarves still thrive amidst the peaks where they scamper on rock ledges near indiscernible to any save the keenest-eyed Elves. Hawks, whose thick feathers provide a measure of warmth against the cold, soar on the harsh winds that forever blow over the mountaintops from the north, occasionally swooping down into the Narrows for an easier meal than the spare heights tend to provide.

Most other creatures in the Grey Mountains can be found near the various rivers and springs that litter the range. Small prey animals and many types of bird dwell in the valleys cut by the cold waters, especially ravens and crows. Other than the howl of the wind, the rush of water and the occasional cracking of stone, the silence of the mountains remains unbroken.

### INHABITANTS

The Dwarves of the Grey Mountains thrived here for centuries, but have long abandoned their works to dust and ruin. It is now a land of lost realms remembered in sad songs, sung within the halls of Erebor and the mines of the Iron Hills. No Free Folk dwell here now; even those Dwarves who wish to return to this place now make their homes among the foothills of the Narrows, not in the mountains themselves.

Those Dwarf-holds that were deserted either fell into disrepair or were taken by Orcs and Goblins. A few Mountain-trolls made their way from the Misty Mountains into the Grey Mountains, seizing whatever blackened hole took their fancy. After the Battle of Five Armies, many of them have been abandoned once more, the Orcs and Goblins having met their ends on the slopes of the Lonely Mountain. Even the few Dragons that made their lairs there have long since removed themselves to the Withered Heath.

In the mountains of the Lower Forks and the East Gap, ruins of another kind dot the mountain sides here and there, for the old kingdoms of the north once deemed this land to be their border and built watchtowers to protect it. These too lie abandoned or crumbled. While the Grey Mountains are mostly silent and still now, in the deep places beneath the mountains, Hobgoblins, Snow-trolls and darker things still dwell, awaiting the call to rouse themselves once more.

## NOTABLE CHARACTERS

### Ellaras the Searcher

Long ago, as Men reckon time, Ellaras was part of a company of Elves that set forth from the Woodland Realm on a quest of great secrecy into the Eryn Duir, the Mountains of Mirkwood. What they sought varies by the teller of the tale.

Some claim that they were to recover one of King Oropher's lost treasures; others believe they were chosen to end one of the Great Spiders, direct descendants of Ungoliant herself, who spin their webs within the very heart of Mirkwood. Regardless of what their mission was, all agree on two points: the mission failed utterly and Ellaras was the sole survivor of the doomed quest.

Ellaras was found, months later, poisoned and raving, his hair white and his eyes wild, near the borders of the Woodland Realm. He spoke to none save his king of what had befallen him. When he had sufficiently recovered, Ellaras quit the halls of the Wood-elves to head north into the Grey Mountains.

Now Ellaras searches for something amidst the abandoned Dwarf-holds of the Grey Mountains. Likely save Thranduil himself, none know exactly what the hunter searches for and he will not speak of it.

While Ellaras has become rather taciturn, he can still be a useful, if unexpected, ally for travellers braving the heights, for he knows a great deal about the lost holds of the Ered Mithrin; far more, in fact, than many Dwarves do. Ellaras' quest has brought him into conflict with another searcher in these peaks – Frár the Beardless (see *Rhovanion Region Guide*, page 22) – and the two are rivals of sorts, crossing blades as well as words on more than one occasion.

**Motivation:** I cannot tell you of what I seek. But if I could, you would agree that there is no more nobler quest upon Middle-earth.

**Expectations:** +2 if the heroes respect Ellaras and his quest without asking awkward questions; -1 if they try to invite themselves along or pry information out of him.



## ELLARAS

*Medium Elf*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
12 (+1)	18 (+4)	13 (+1)	17 (+3)	15 (+2)	11 (+0)

**Armour Class** 16 (Leather Corslet)

**Hit Points** 66 (12d8+12)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** History +5, Lore +5, Perception +6, Survival +6

**Senses** passive Perception 14

**Languages** Quenya, Sindarin, Westron

**Challenge** 3 (700 XP)

**Desperate.** If Ellaras begins his turn with 33 or less hit points, he gains Advantage on all his attack rolls.

**Expert.** Ellaras doubles his Proficiency Bonus for Perception and Survival (included above).

### Actions

**Multiattack.** Ellaras makes two attacks with his dagger or bow.

**Dagger.** *Melee or Ranged Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, reach 5 ft or range 20/60, one target. *Hit:* 6 (1d4+4) piercing damage.

**Bow.** *Ranged Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, range 80/320 ft, one target. *Hit:* 8 (1d8+4) piercing damage.

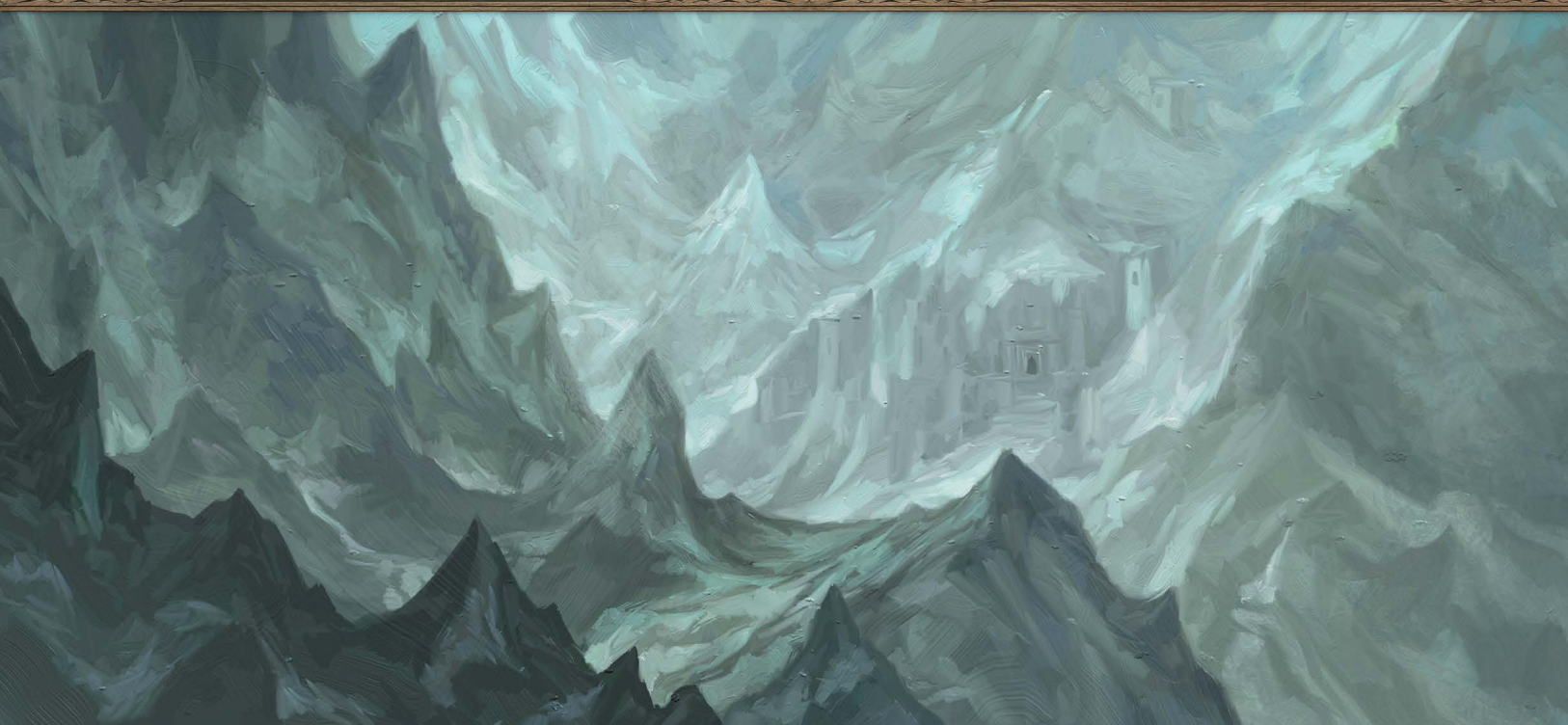
## NOTABLE PLACES

### The Hoary Mountain

The tallest peak of the Grey Mountains is the Gamolberg, the Hoary Mountain, a mighty height towering above the surrounding peaks. It takes its name from its snow capped summit, which often appears streaked with grey, as the limestone surface is revealed by strong winds or by the warmer seasons' thawing. Centuries ago, Men living in the north used to test their courage by climbing the mountain's sheer southern face, and stories tell of a throne sitting atop a high terrace, carved in the grey rock by the North wind itself.

### Beinharn

Amidst the Lower Fork of the Grey Mountains, there stands a Dwarf-hold much-celebrated in song: Beinharn, in the Sindarin tongue, the Halls of Beautiful Stone. While the reclusive Wood-elves generally have little to say on the accomplishments of Dwarves, in the days of Beinharn's glory, more than a few ventured into the mountains to view its fabled halls with open admiration. Shaped directly from the living rock of the mountains, Beinharn was a wonder, a Dwarf-hold not particularly rich in ores, but blessed in sculptors and masons. The cliff face of Beinharn was lavishly ornamented, no surface went untouched by



skilled hands, resulting in a continuous, wondrous relief that wrapped about the paths that lead to the hold's entrance. The inner halls were similarly adorned, even the simplest corridors carried one beautiful ornamentation or another.

When the Dragons attacked the halls of the Grey Mountains, the Dwarves of Beinharn sealed away some of their greatest works behind cunningly wrought doors before fleeing. Beinharn's lack of gold, long lamented by its inhabitants, proved its salvation: with nothing for the Dragons to scent out, the Hall of Beautiful Stone was mostly left in peace. Beinharn now stands empty, but generally intact, though time has taken its toll. There are none to view its fabled stonework now but the hawks that roost atop its towers.

### New Fellowship Phase Undertaking: Study the Stonework of Beinharn

Companions who spend a Fellowship phase in Erebor or Dale can set out to examine the marvellous stonework of Beinharn. This might otherwise be a cold, cheerless endeavour were it not for the beauty of the carvings. For the length of the next the Adventuring phase, describing the beauty of Beinharn gains a hero Advantage on the Introduction Check in any audience with Dwarves.

### The Fireheart Mine

Above all things, Dwarves delight in the wonders of the earth; the lustre of gold, the strength of iron, the hard beauty of true-silver and the splendour of gemstones, all cut their way deep into the hearts of Durin's folk. Beneath the Wall of the Grey Mountains, in the deepest, most impenetrable part of the range, the Dwarves discovered a vein of precious stone that they had never encountered before. Once cut into many faces, the stones showed bright green by day, but flickered and changed to a soft red in the light of torches or under starlight.

The Dwarves held in great esteem this wondrous new gemstone, both for its beauty and its hardness, and many jewels and weapons were adorned with it. Whatever they

named it in their own speech, the Dwarves do not tell, but in the Common Tongue, they called it the "fireheart". The folk of Durin have long since given the source of fireheart gems up for lost, and see their glittering light no more save on cherished older works...

Yet the Fireheart Mine still exists. While the paths that once led to it are lost, the mine was neither destroyed, nor occupied. Deep in Erebor's Chamber of Mazarbul, a diligent scholar might find a map that leads to a secret path through the mountains to the mine; and perhaps if they moved quickly and quietly they might yet be able to win a few choice stones from the old mine. (Fireheart gems can greatly assist in forging new treasures – see page 34 for more details.)

### Zirakinbar

In the Lower Fork stands a lone watchtower, carved by the Dwarves out of the living rock, atop the peak of Zirakinbar. A narrow mountain road leads up to the main gate of the tower and as a company approaches, they will see the many empty windows of the tower.

Sometimes smoke issues forth from its upper levels, sometimes strange lights can be seen glittering inside; for the watchtower of Zirakinbar is often occupied, but by creatures fouler than Dwarves. Some whisper it is haunted by a ghostly servant of Sauron, others that a Cold-drake slumbers here now... (See *Wilderland Adventures*, pages 128 and 137, for more about what lies in Zirakinbar.)

### The Withered Heath

Infamous throughout Middle-earth as the breeding ground of Dragons, the Withered Heath has the darkest of reputations – and with good reason. At the eastern end of the Grey Mountains, where the mountains split into the Upper and Lower Forks, lies the Withered Heath. Travellers journeying through the Grey Mountain Forks will sometimes catch sight of the Withered Heath through a gap in the mountains; scorched black and rent by the claws of ancient creatures, covered in a constant pall of smoke and, when the cold wind blows through, it carries with it the stench of ash. This is no place for mortal creatures.

Here the great serpents of the world bred for many generations. Wingless Cold-drakes, limbless Long worms

and the Great Worms, who possess both limbs and wings, all mated here before turning back to devouring one another in a near endless contest of wits and raw strength.

Despite the remoteness of the Withered Heath, its inhabitants always seemed at least partially aware of the world beyond their valley, dreaming of far-away treasures in their Dragon-sleep. The war against the Dwarves took its toll on the Great Worms, for very few remain now. Smaug the Golden, greatest of his kind in the Third Age of the world, slew or devoured as many of his fellows as he could catch in order to marshal his strength before sacking Erebor.

Whether by the talons of Smaug or some other cause unknown to Free Folk, very few of the Great Drakes endure, but they have not all left the world as yet...

The Withered Heath remains a poison-blasted wasteland. A waterless Dark Land where none but the insane or desperate venture. Yet Smaug the Golden was not the only Dragon to sport wealth upon his vast hide, and many generations of Great Worms have died upon the Withered Heath, leaving countless troves in their wake. So, at least, goes the reasoning of the desperate fools who seek for treasure here. Most turn back long before they arrive those brave enough to push on peer over the rim of the plateau before turning back. Only the foolhardy continue onto the Withered Heath itself, and none ever return.

## THE UPPER MARCHES

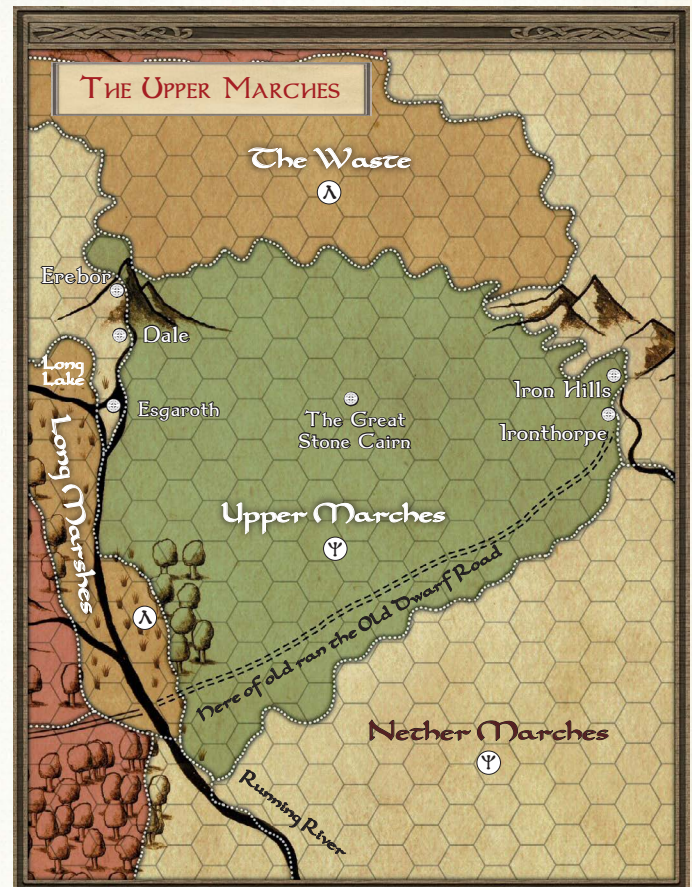
The open countryside that extends from the eastern banks of the River Running to the foothills of the Iron Hills is called the Upper Marches. These plains extend south for nearly a hundred miles, bordered by the Long Marshes in the west, before eventually opening out into the wide steppes of the Nether Marches.

Too far east to benefit from the protection afforded to the Northern Dalelands by the Grey Mountains, here winds howl out of the North in the winter. Sometimes these winds carry an unnatural chill upon them, or else foul air and ash blown off from the Waste. Northmen have dwelt here since long before the birth of Dale and few

abandoned their homes when Smaug's reign began. With the Kingdom of Dale newly resurgent, Bard increasingly looks to the Upper Marches to expand his realm, and many Bardings have settled here in the past five years, hopeful for a new life.

Far beyond the plains of the Upper Marches lies the twin kingdom to Erebor: the Iron Hills. Much like Erebor was founded at the headwaters of the River Running, so too were the Iron Hills carved at the headwaters of the Redwater.

**Combat Scenery:** bracken, foundations, freezing cold, lone trees, nettle banks, small streams, steep slopes (near the Iron Hills)



## WILDLIFE

The Northmen who live in the Upper Marches tend large flocks of sheep and small herds of cattle, following them where they wander. As a traveller draws east into the long plains of this realm they find a land filled with hares,

rabbits and all manner of birds. Great flocks of ravens wheel high overhead, feeding on carrion abandoned by the large predators found in the eastern wilds. Amongst these are bears and wandering wolves, which come from the southern woodlands in search of prey.

### INHABITANTS

The Northmen of Rhovanion – ancestors to the Bardings – have lived between the rivers east of Mirkwood for many thousands of years, perhaps more. They once paid fealty to a king of Wilderland, who attempted to weld the tribes and clans into a single realm. Although many fled west to the Anduin Vales when his kingdom fell, some remained, living along the Running River.

In time, some followed the trade between the Iron Hills and the Lonely Mountain, eventually founding Dale, but most lived as they always had done, a pastoral existence amidst the herds, or in small villages along the river.

Into this bucolic landscape newcomers have recently come. Many Men have been drawn to the Kingdom of Dale, hearing tell of the exploits of the Dragon-slayer. Bard encourages many of them to settle the Upper Marches, where he has been handing out parcels of land to any who would take them. All across the plains, new villages and farmsteads have sprung up; the Kingdom of Dale resurgent.

The Dwarves of the Iron Hills dwell in their halls to the east here, occasionally mining gold and jewels, along with vast quantities of their namesake. Notably grim, even for Dwarves, the folk of the Iron Hills are famously laconic, favouring deeds over words.

While there are certainly skilled craftsmen amidst the folk of the Iron Hills, many of them are content to be hard-working miners and chose to stay when their lord removed himself to Erebor. Besides, the forges of the Lonely Mountain still need their iron and it isn't going to walk there of its own accord. With the resurgence of Erebor, there is much traffic between the two kingdoms and talk of building the old Dwarf Roads anew.

### NOTABLE CHARACTERS

#### Thorin Stonehelm

When his father took the throne of Erebor, he left his son Thorin to rule the Iron Hills as his steward. Nicknamed 'the Stonehelm', for he is so stubborn it is said his head must be made of stone, Thorin is anxious to prove his worth as both the son of Dáin Ironfoot and the namesake of Thorin Oakenshield.

Much to his chagrin, he is required to spend most of his days tending to courtly affairs and trade matters with both the Bardings and his kin in the west. When the host



of the Iron Hills set forth to the Battle of Five Armies, he was forced to remain behind to guard the hold, a bitter regret that troubles him still. Thorin knows every song about the folk of Durin ever written and holds those that speak of courage close in his heart.

Much like his father, Thorin dresses more like a miner than the son of a king, his red forked beard tucked out of the way of his tools.

**Motivation:** Though the Prince in me seeks peace for his people, the warrior secretly hopes that the Shadow will return, for I know that I am ready to forge my own legend worthy of my fallen kin.

**Expectations:** +4 if the heroes bring a call for action to Thorin – he hates simply waiting for things to happen; -2 if the Company advises caution even if Thorin’s response is rash; +1 if a Dwarf Player-hero gently chides Thorin for speaking before thinking (-3 instead if the hero is from another culture).

### THORIN STONEHELM

*Medium Dwarf*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
18 (+4)	10 (+0)	15 (+2)	14 (+2)	12 (+1)	11 (+0)

**Armour Class** 17 (Dwarf-wrought Hauberk)

**Hit Points** 84 (13d8+26)

**Speed** 25 ft

**Skills** History +5, Insight +4, Persuasion +3

**Senses** passive Perception 11, night vision

**Languages** Khuzdûl, Westron

**Challenge** 5 (1,800 XP)

**Baleful Mattock.** Thorin scores a critical hit on a natural roll of 19 or 20.

**Battle-charge.** If Thorin moves at least half his speed to engage a new foe he gains Advantage on his attack rolls.

**Guardian.** Thorin can use his reaction to make an Opportunity Attack when a creature within reach attempts to move away from him. If he hits the creature, it does not move.

#### Actions

**Multiattack.** Thorin makes three attacks with his mattock.

**Mattock.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +7 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 11 (2d6+4) piercing damage.

### Sark the Bear-skinned

Brigands and robbers are a common threat in the Upper Marches, even more so with the increase in trade along the River Running and the settlers pouring into the plains from Dale. Of these bandits, none are so feared as Sark the Bear-skinned, a Half-orc from the East who prowls the wilds of the Upper Marches wearing the mantle of a great black bear that he is said to have slain with his own hands.

With his notched axe and a band of murderous brigands at his call, Sark once preyed upon lone travellers, wandering shepherds and isolated farms; but as his band grows larger and the pickings richer, he finds himself increasingly drawn to the new villages of the Upper Marches.

### SARK

*Medium humanoid (Orc-kind)*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
16 (+3)	13 (+1)	19 (+4)	10 (+0)	15 (+1)	17 (+3)

**Armour Class** 18 (Orc Mail, Shield)

**Hit Points** 68 (8d8+32)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Intimidation +5, Perception +5

**Senses** darkvision 60 ft, passive Perception 15

**Languages** Orcish, Westron

**Challenge** 4 (1,100 XP)

**Bulky Armour.** Sark has Disadvantage on Dexterity checks.

**Horrible Strength.** If Sark makes a successful melee attack, he may use his bonus action to cause 3 additional damage to the target.

#### Actions

**Multiattack.** Sark makes two attacks with either his Orc-axe or long spear.

**Orc-axe.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +5 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 6 (1d6+3) slashing damage or 7 (1d8+3) slashing damage if wielded with two hands.

**Long Spear.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +5 to hit, reach 10 ft, one target. *Hit:* 8 (1d10+3) piercing damage. Heavy, two-handed.

#### Reactions

**Counterattack (Recharge 5-6).** If an attack roll misses Sark, he can use his reaction to make an attack roll with Advantage. He must be wielding a melee weapon and able to see his attacker.

## NOTABLE PLACES

### The Old Dwarf Road

The Dwarves once traded extensively between the Iron Hills and the Blue Mountains, travelling upon a broad, proud road of finely quarried stone that ran right through the middle of Mirkwood and beyond. Just as the Old Forest Road has been swallowed up by the forest, so too has the portion of the road that once extended from the forest to the Iron Hills vanished beneath the grass of the Upper Marches.

Here and there a traveller might stumble upon a flagstone, or the ruins of a waystation overgrown and forgotten, but for the most part nature has reclaimed the road. But with heightened trade, Steward Thorin Stonehelm wonders if the road might be reopened once more, perhaps in partnership with King Bard.

### The Great Stone Cairn

In the heart of the rolling plains of the Upper Marches is a mound of stones that has stood since before the coming of Smaug. It can be seen from miles around and the lingering ruins of a long abandoned stone tower still stand atop it. This was once a wayfort upon the Old Dwarf Road, a keep that stood guard over travellers and provided them with somewhere to stay the night. When the road fell into disuse, so too did the wayfort, reclaimed by nature.

Now it serves as the hold for folk of a different kind, for it is home to a colony of ravens brought here by Korun, son of Roäc, during the reign of Smaug. Those that come seeking unusual counsel and whose need is great, may find it here. The ravens are wise birds who know many secrets and have countless eyes throughout the Marches. If the ravens find a requester's cause just, they may give them some of the answers they seek, for a price; a trinket or a quest perhaps.

Sadly, Korun himself was recently slain by a Goblin arrow (see *Wilderland Adventures*, page 121), and his ravens are besides themselves with grief. Now they cry out for revenge, but what is a bird such as they to do against a Goblin? If only they could find a company willing to take up their cause...

### The Iron Hills

The easternmost settlement of Dwarves is to be found at the farthest edge of Wilderland, where the map ends in a spine of stone peaks. The hills rise tall and fair, cold and unforgiving, stretching from west to east. These are the Iron Hills, aptly named for the bountiful iron mined from its deeps.

While most Dwarves crave gold, jewels or mithril, the Dwarves of the Iron Hills know that these riches are but rewards earned with the stroke of a mattock – mattocks that are born in their forges. The people of the Iron Hills harbour a fierce, martial pride; however, they see themselves as wardens, not warmongers.

In the past, these lands were attacked by Men and Orcs from the East, and the Dwarves of the Iron Hills remain vigilant against such threats. As a result, the hold of the Iron Hills is neither as fair as Erebor, nor as grand as Khazad-dûm, for its denizens are rather more practical and stoic. The gate of the hold is much smaller than that of Erebor, barred by a huge iron portcullis that takes ten Dwarves to raise. Long passages within are set with great traps, ready to be collapsed on those who would invade the halls of the Iron Hills. It has few great chambers within; instead, most rooms are small so that enemies can enter no more than a dozen at a time, wherein they will find themselves unable to avoid the sharp axes and heavy mattocks of Thorin Stonehelm's guards.

Only the great forge in the lowest levels of the Iron Hills is as grand in scale as any hall found in Erebor. Here furnaces large enough to swallow a man burn red day and night and anvils ring in ceaseless chorus. Beside the many workshops are storage rooms made not for gold, but to house the broad shields, sharp axes, hauberks of steel, and hose of fine mesh for which the Iron Hills are rightly renowned.

### Ironthorpe

The Old Forest Road that ran through Mirkwood long ago originally had two branches east of the forest. One headed directly north to the Lonely Mountain, the other ran 150 miles north-east across the Upper Marches to eventually end just south of the Iron Hills, along the banks of the Redwater, in a town called Ironthorpe.



Before the coming of Smaug, Ironthorpe had been a small, but thriving, settlement of Northmen that acted for the Iron Hills much as Dale acted for Erebor: as a trading place for their goods and a means of acquiring food-supplies. With the coming of the Dragon, though, all changed. As the Great Worm's corruption spread, eventually creating the blasted land known as the Desolation of Smaug, ash continually blew east into the fields about Ironthorpe, slowly poisoning the ground and turning their crops sickly. With Erebor gone and Ironthorpe's bounty reduced to subsistence, Grór's people had to find new sources of food and new customers for their goods. It soon became obvious that they would have to travel far on their own to do so.

Ironthorpe became a shell of its former self. A squalid town filled with desperate folk, where the Dwarves would occasionally load goods onto the Redwater bound south for Dorwinion, but avoided otherwise. Erebor has been restored and regular trade with the Iron Hills renewed, but Ironthorpe has been slow to change. It remains a wretched place filled with outcasts and scofflaws.

There are plans in the works to rebuild the old roads and perhaps make something worthwhile of the town, but Dáin is wary of where the allegiances of those who live in Ironthorpe now reside, a sentiment his son shares.

## THE LONG MARSHES

*The lands opened wide about him, filled with the waters of the river which broke up and wandered in a hundred winding courses, or halted in marshes and pools dotted with isles on every side...*

The narrow belt of land flanking both sides of the River Running where it touches the eastern eaves of Mirkwood has been turned into a trackless swampland by the flooding of the river waters over too many years to count. But in more recent times, relentless rains and even a couple of earthquakes have seen the Long Marshes expand their boundaries north, to reach and engulf even the course of the Forest River where it exits Mirkwood to the east.

By 2946, the Long Marshes cover an area more than one hundred miles long from north to south, from the eastern borders of the Woodland Realm to the shores of the Long Lake, and south beyond the Mountains of Mirkwood.



To enter the Long Marshes, a traveller needs only follow the River Running as it goes south beyond the Long Lake, or the Forest River to the west. Often, the marshes will offer the same sight, regardless of the chosen direction: a wide, treeless expanse of mires and pools of sullen waters, unmoving but for the river course that stirs them. Here, thick mists rise in the morning, and lift only with the approaching of midday. But the fog never really disappears; rather it changes into a transparent vapour, capable of turning the brightest light of the Sun into the palest radiance.

The dreariness of the region is multiplied where the marshes meet Mirkwood. Under the shadows of the forest all sounds of nature are utterly silenced and only chill breezes move the drooping branches of the trees that rise from the waters.

**Combat Scenery:** Black toadstools, bogs, flooded pits, mud, sucking bogs, thick-trunked trees

## WILDLIFE

Amidst the reeds, arrowgrass, sundew and marsh violets the Long Marshes teem with life. Many kinds of frogs live near to the water while eels, tench, roach and rudd swim in the slow flowing pools and meres. Grey herons stalk through the mud while marsh harriers circle overhead. Amidst the reeds live otters, water voles and shrews.

In the southern reaches of the march roost visitors from the nearby Mountains of Mirkwood – gore-crows. They look like small-sized ravens with a greenish sheen to their feathers. They are cruel and intelligent birds and legends say that they are in league with the hideous Marsh-dwellers that live here.

## INHABITANTS

There are no Free Folk here, but several creatures hide among the bogs and stagnant pools of the Long Marshes, profiting from the remoteness and unwelcoming nature of the place. Some among them are found exclusively within the confines of the swamps, and their activity has greatly worsened the reputation of the region.

Marsh-Hags (page 99 of the *Loremaster's Guide*) and Marsh-Ogres (page 109 of the same volume) both live here in addition to more common Orc-kind. But the greatest danger are in the sunken ruins that dot the swamplands for there is where the Marsh-dwellers (page 136 of the *Rhovanion Region Guide*) wait.

## NOTABLE CHARACTERS

### Galion

Once the personal cupbearer of the Elf-King, Galion is was consigned to the Long Marshes for drunkenness since the famous escape of a group of Dwarves from the royal halls. Now he and a small band of Mirkwood Elves patrol the marshes and make sure that none of its dangerous inhabitants make their way into the lands of Thranduil.

Galion's once jubilant nature has turned grim and he dresses now in dark-brown leathers, the better to move unseen in the shadows of Mirkwood. He has hope that his assignment is temporary – perhaps only a decade or two – and that he will once again be in the good graces of his king.

**Motivation:** While I serve my lord with pleasure, I am better suited for his elegant halls than this muck and mire.

**Expectations:** **-4** if there are Hobbits or Dwarves in the Company – he will never forget his embarrassment at the (invisible) hands of Bilbo; **+1** if there is a high-ranking Wood Elf or High Elf in the Company that might put in a good word with Thranduil.

### GALION Medium Elf

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
11 (+0)	18 (+4)	14 (+2)	15 (+2)	10 (+0)	13 (+1)

**Armour Class** 16 (Leather Corslet)

**Hit Points** 52 (8d8+16)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Skills** Athletics +2, Lore +4, Perception +5

**Senses** passive Perception 15

**Languages** Silvan, Sindarin, Westron

**Challenge** 3 (700 XP)

**Deadly Shot.** At the start of his turn, Galion may use his bonus action to aim. His speed becomes 0. If he does so then he has Advantage on all ranged weapon attacks he makes this round.

**Hawk's Eye.** Galion may use this ability as a bonus action. He does not suffer Disadvantage on attack rolls due to being at long range this turn.

**Hunter.** Galion doubles his Proficiency Bonus for Perception checks (included above).

#### Actions

**Multiattack:** Galion can make two attacks with either his Short Sword or his Great Bow.

**Short Sword:** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 7 (1d6+4) piercing damage.

**Great Bow:** *Ranged Weapon Attack:* +6 to hit, range 150/600 ft, one target. *Hit:* 8 (1d8+4) piercing damage.

## NOTABLE PLACES

### The Wood of Hanging Trees

Where the Old Forest Road meets the slow-moving waters of the Marshes are tangles of hoary willow-trees standing close together. Their drooping branches trail into the water and shut out the light of day even at its brightest. The trees' moulding roots sink deep into the grey slime.

Long ago, a town of Men once thrived, serving as a waystation both for travelling Dwarves coming from or travelling to the Iron Hills and merchants coming from the South or East. When the power of the northern Kings waned, the town was abandoned, until the marshes and the forest swallowed its ruins, together with any trace of its existence.

Now the only thing that waits in the groves of the willow-trees is Gallows-weed (page 124 of the *Rhovanion Region Guide*). Spotting one of the plants requires a **DC 20 Wisdom (Perception)** check. Unwary heroes who pass too close to a tree may be Surprised as vines lash out and pull the victims up off the ground and begin to strangle them.

### The Lair of the Marsh-dwellers

In the centre of the willow-trees, the ruins are more prominent as if this was the place where the main buildings of the sunken town once rose. There is a deep pool of dark water here. Mounds of mud-splattered and weed-choker ruins encircle the water, with the remains of a marble arch

and rotting wooden gate on the southern shore. In the treetops around the pool the Gore-crows croak, signalling the presence of any trespassers.

Those who linger here may imagine that they hearing the tolling of a distant bell. It seems to come from under the ground. This is the hidden lair of the Marsh-dwellers.

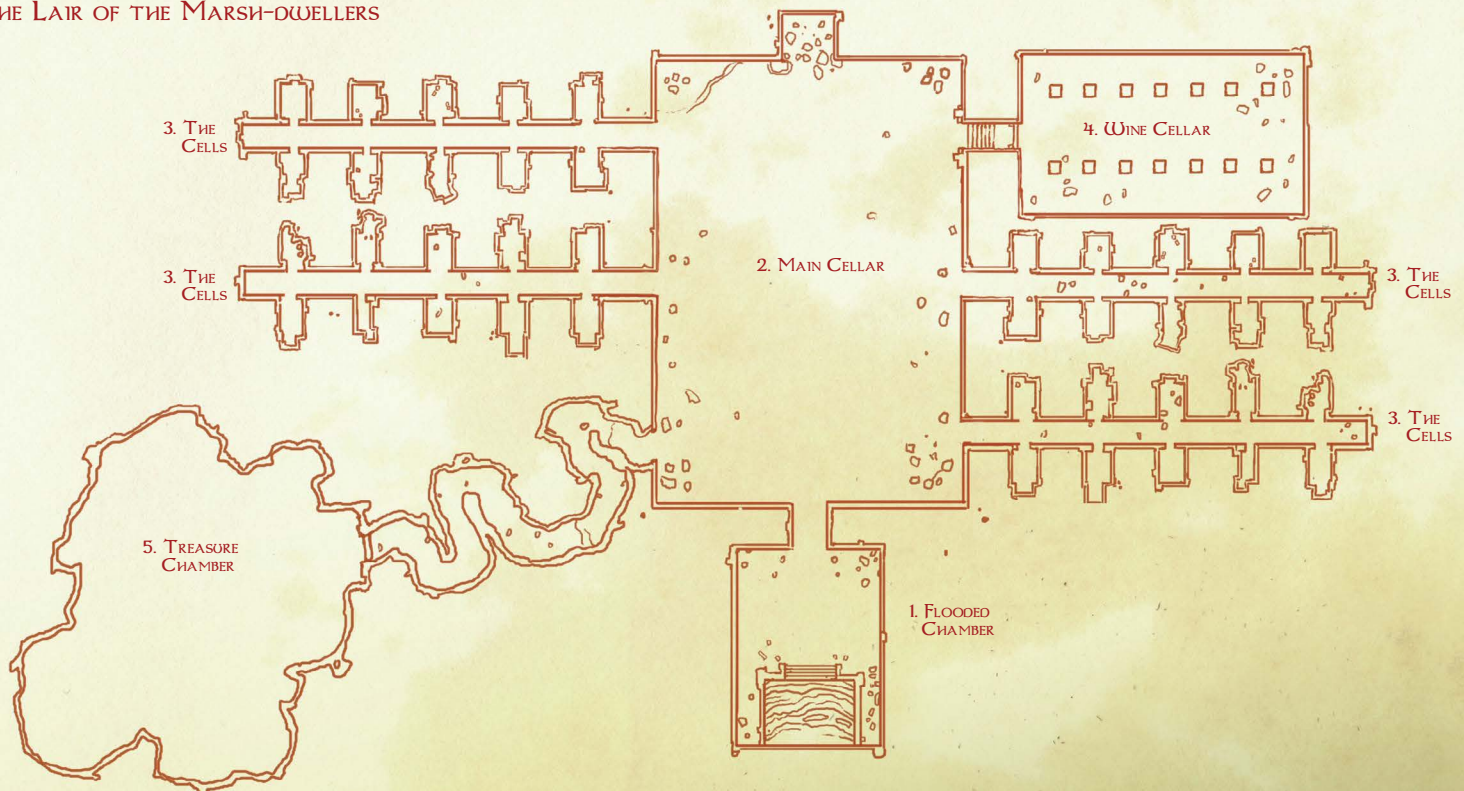
### General Description

The underground complex reeks of dying and rotting things. It is dark, dank and cold, its stone floor invariably covered by a film of stagnant water that provides it a slippery sheen (see page 95 of the  *Loremaster's Guide*).

#### 1. Flooded Chamber

The heroes can reach this room by entering the pool, and then just walking or swimming underwater for a few yards to an opening on the poolside. The opening leads to a short passage that emerges in the half-flooded chamber. The room is completely devoid of any features, barring wet stone walls and a dark doorway leading to the main cellar.

### THE LAIR OF THE MARSH-DWELLERS



## 2. Main Cellar

This is a vast vaulted chamber, presenting six arched openings, three on the right side and three on the left (leading to several smaller cellars). The farthest doorway on the right side is larger, its arch decorated with stones of many colours (leading to the wine cellar).

In the wall opposite the opening to the flooded cellar, there is a narrow vertical chimney, leading to the surface (a faint breeze can be felt if someone sticks their head into the chimney); inside the chimney hangs a bell rope, that if pulled rings a dull-sounding bell (attracting Marsh-dwellers). The floor inside the confined space of the chimney is littered with gore crow feathers and bird deposits.

## 3. The Cells

The four passages that exit the main cellar lead to several cells, once used to store goods and wines, and today serving as the Marsh-dwellers' resting places. Most cells appear as no more than wet, dirty holes, filled with waste and food scraps. The walls of the cells and the passages between them are narrow (page 95 of the  *Loremaster's Guide*). There are dozens of the monsters here.

## 4. Wine Cellar

The decorated archway that opens in the main cellar leads to a short flight of marble steps descending into the darkness. At the end of it, a reinforced door defaced by claw marks is found. Beyond the door is the wine cellar, a wide room with a low ceiling resting on short, stocky pillars.

## 5. Treasure Chamber

The first doorway to the left of the flooded chamber leads to a tight and twisting passage that suddenly opens into a wider semicircular room. Here, a great wooden gate is set into the stone wall. The foul stench that permeates every inch of the underground complex is almost overpowering here. The gate is not locked, and the great wooden door can be pulled open with some effort, its hinges creaking noisily. Beyond the gate is a natural cave, the treasure chamber of the Marsh-dwellers: on the irregular floor is a huge heap of polished gold coins and other shining objects, like silver table knives, cups and dishes, lamps and candlesticks. A warm, shivering glow seems to radiate from the hoard of the Marsh-dwellers (see *The Hoard of the Marsh-dwellers*).

## The Hoard of the Marsh-dwellers

The treasure has been tainted by the long brooding of the greedy creatures, and each hero that gazes upon it must make a Corruption check, a DC 15 Wisdom saving throw. Those who fail are struck dumb by the sight of the treasure and are Stunned for 1 minute.

If the heroes manage to retrieve the hoard, it is worth at least 300\*\* but every item recovered is automatically Touched by the Shadow.

## THE NETHER MARCHES

The rolling hills of the Upper Marches eventually give way to the low, long plains of the Nether Marches as one passes south, a great broad valley bounded by the River Running to the south and the Redwater to the east.

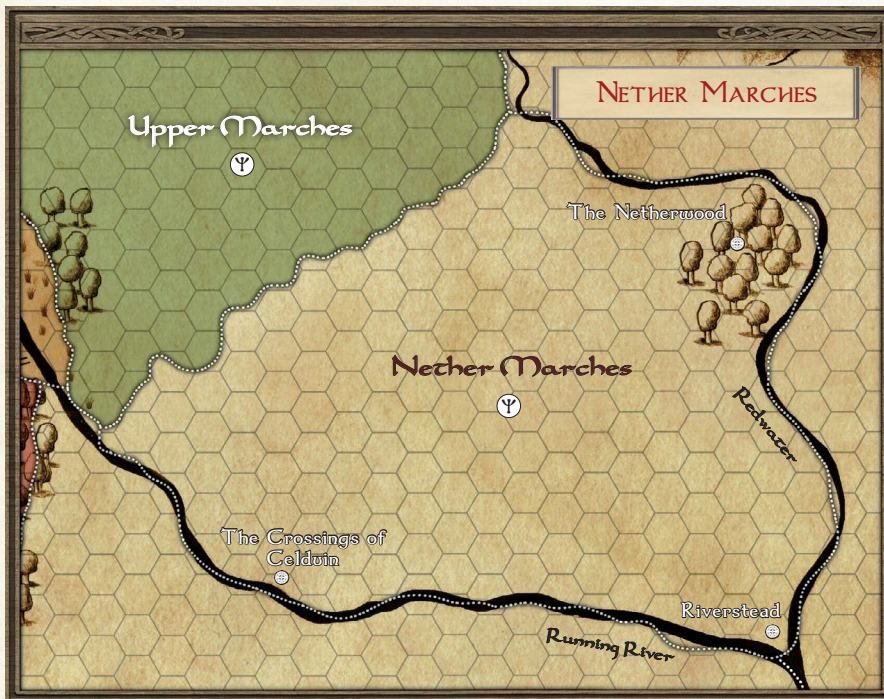
This is a land still almost untouched by the Bardings, for this is the true frontier of the Kingdom of Dale. The summers here are hot and often dry, but the winters are cold. At all times of the year violent storms can rise swiftly out of the East, and on the wide open plains there is nowhere to seek shelter.

Centuries ago great armies from the East and Northmen belonging to kingdoms long past clashed on the plains of the Nether Marches. The songs of such battles are still sung in the halls of the North, and occasionally a traveller may stumble upon a rusty blade or broken bone amidst the grass.

**Combat Scenery:** Ancient dykes, bracken, nettle banks, gentle slopes, scattered rocks, strong wind

## WILDLIFE

The Nether Marches is a broad grassland, in truth the start of the wide steppes that run far into the East. The land is covered with seemingly endless fields of high green grasses, broken only by tussocks of coarse brown grass and shrub. What trees there are grow only in the Netherwood, which sits in a broad bend of the Redwater.



Large herds of wild horses roam the grasslands here. They were once tamed by the forerunners of the Éothéod, but they have long-since been left to run free. Other grazing animals wander the grassland; wild, long-horned cattle, sheep once-tame but long since escaped domestication, and great colonies of rabbits, whose burrows extend far underground.

There is little place to hide in the Nether Marches, which favours the swift or the stealthy predator. Long-eared foxes and dusky-coloured lynxes prowl silently through the grass, while in the vast open skies falcons and sparrow hawks wheel high on wide gyres.

### INHABITANTS

The Nether Marches have ever been a frontier for more civilised lands; just as they now mark the south-eastern limits of Bard's kingdom, over a thousand years ago they formed the northern borders of the King of Wilderland's domain. While his kingdom was all but destroyed in the Great Plague of 1635 and, later, finished by armies from the East, some of his folk yet remain. They follow their herds of cattle across the plains or make their homes in small fishing villages along the Running River, but they owe fealty to no king.

Trade is increasingly bountiful in these lands, as word spreads of the rebirth of Dale and Erebor. More often than not traders come up the Running River from Dorwinion, travelling to Esgaroth by boat.

Once or twice a season large, gaudily coloured caravans pulled by oxen cross the steppes, laden with exotic cloths, spices and other goods. They stop at the largest settlement in the Nether Marches, the town of Riverstead, where they trade with intrepid merchants from Lake-town and Dale before returning East with iron and gold, stone and timber.

On rare occasions, perhaps once in a generation, an entourage from the Woodland Realm will cross the Nether

Marches on their way to Dorwinion. In such times the steppes come alive in the still summer nights to the sound of singing and merriment amongst the grass, and folk gather to listen and marvel at Elf-lights off in the distance. Such nights are remembered for decades after.

### Dorwinion

Dorwinion lies hundreds of miles downriver from Esgaroth, surrounded by the River Running bordering the inland Sea of Rhûn. It is a land of merchant princes and princesses, who trade far and wide; with the Elves in the West, Esgaroth in the North and even as far as Gondor in the South.

Dorwinion is particularly known for its vineyards, from which the finest of wines are made, much sought after in the courts of Men – and Elves. To the Northmen, the folk of Dorwinion seem exotic, with dusky complexions, deep, dark eyes, and clothes of brightly patterned cloth; 'tis no wonder that King Bard was so enchanted by his queen, Una.

## NOTABLE CHARACTERS

### Alduna

Alduna's tongue is as fast as the river waters on which she regularly travels, peddling her wares along the Running River all the way from Dorwinion to the village, Celduin. She is the master of a small trading vessel, the *Foam Dancer*, and her choice in what wines to carry is second to none, so much so that some of Thranduil's emissaries regularly seek her out personally. Alduna occasionally takes passengers, if they make a good offer, or she finds them "interesting".

Alduna is a heavy-set Dorwinion woman, with dusky skin and dark eyes. On first impression somewhat plain, her resonant laugh and her frequent smiles that light up her face ensure that she does not lack for suitors. She favours garments of bright blue and yellow chased with silver accents.

**Motivation:** A deal is a deal, and a deal that benefits both parties is likely to lead to better business.

**Expectations:** +1 if the Company has strangers from far-away lands in its midst; +3 if money or other valuables are part of the conversation; -2 if any of the heroes display a provincial attitude.

### Kajus the Easterling

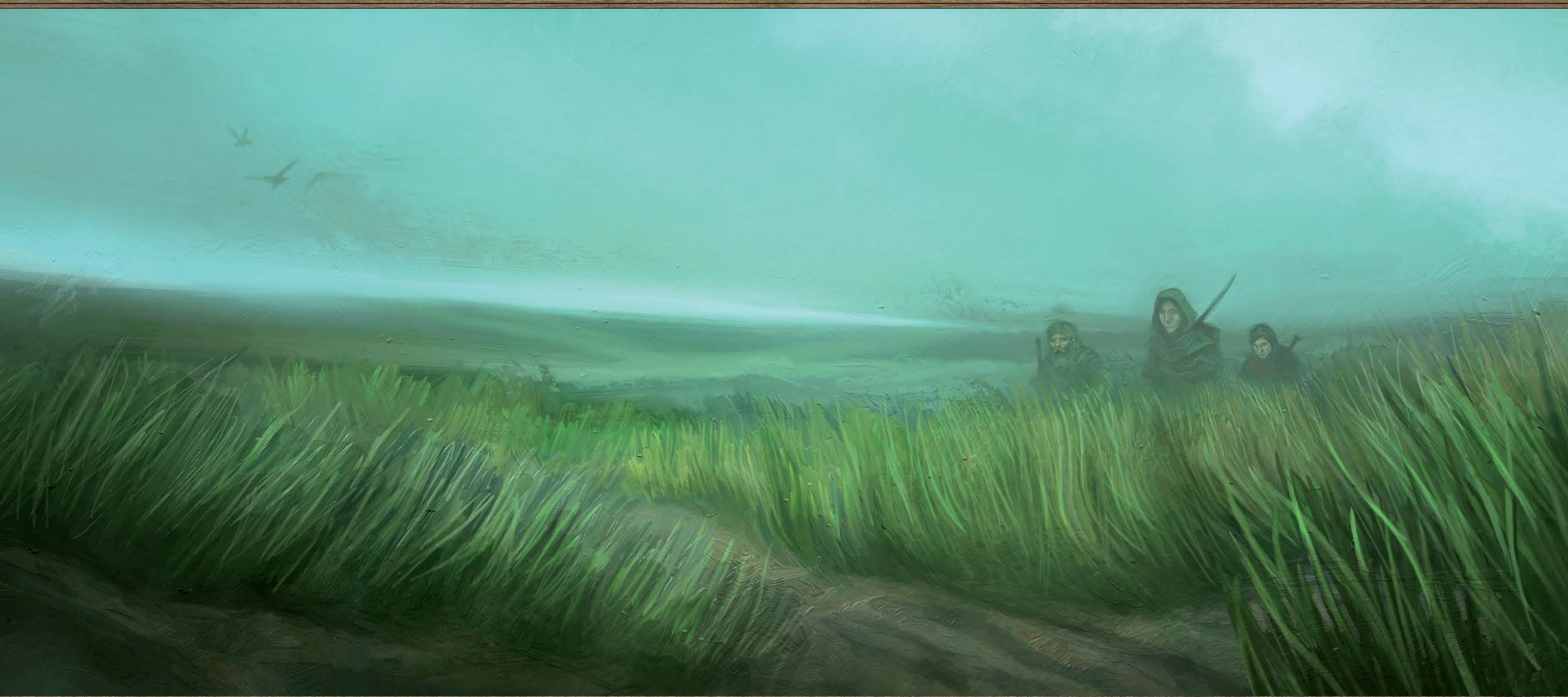
A merchant from the distant East, Kajus frequently makes his camp in a massive tent, filled with sumptuous cushions and magnificent carpets, on the edge of Riverstead. Kajus deals in spices and information, though the second trade has begun to bother him of late.

He has been well paid over the years to pass sealed letters and occasionally news or other observations about his fellow merchants to couriers who bear a specific icon. Of late, the questions have grown disconcerting, and he has begun selectively holding back what he tells to those who quietly show him the mark of the White Hand.

Kajus is an excellent source of information for many of the comings and goings of Riverstead. He either personally knows, or knows about, everyone that has ever docked at the town. Kajus has dark-mahogany coloured skin, with kindly brown eyes. He frequently drinks a bitter tea, for which many of his regular guests have acquired quite a taste.

**Motivation:** I wish to understand the world or at least my place in it.

**Expectations:** +1 if the characters have something to offer Kajus; +3 if they somehow can answer his questions about



the White Hand and know to offer that information; -2 if they reveal that they are the agents of a Wizard – Kajus has begun to suspect that the Wise are manipulating the common folk for their own ends.

### The Tracker Loore

A hunter of the Nether Marches, Loore regularly wanders over the wide grasslands, going wherever the wind or his mood takes him. A tracker without peer, there is nowhere on the steppes to flee where Loore cannot eventually follow. Loore keeps several birds of prey near him at all times, most often a beautiful grey hawk and a small prairie falcon. He also keeps a great secret, for Loore is a direct descendant of the ancient kings of old and he speaks the languages of all birds.

#### LOORE *Medium Human*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
17 (+3)	11 (+0)	15 (+2)	13 (+1)	18 (+4)	8 (-1)

**Armour Class** 11 (Leather jerkin)

**Hit Points** 45 (7d8+14)

**Speed** 40 ft

**Skills** Animal Handling +6, Perception +8, Survival +8

**Senses** passive Perception 11

**Languages** Westron, The Language of Birds

**Challenge** 2 (450 XP)

**Focused.** Loore displays amazing discipline in combat. He has 3 Focus points, which he regains when he takes a short or long rest. He can use his bonus action and spend one Focus point on his turn to take the Dash, Disengage or Dodge action or to make another attack with his great spear.

**Grey Hawk.** In combat, Loore can use his bonus action to command his friend to aid him against all attackers. Until the start of his next turn, all attack rolls against him are at Disadvantage. The Grey Hawk is too quick and clever to be the target of any normal attack.

**Expert.** Loore doubles his Proficiency Bonus for Perception and Survival (included above).

#### Actions

**Great Spear.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +5 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 9 (1d12+3) piercing damage.

Most seasons, Loore trades fine rabbit pelts for what little sundries he requires, but he will occasionally take on commissions to lead others across the Nether Marches.

Loore is a wiry man of indeterminate middle-age, with dark hair, shot through with strands of silver. His yellow-green eyes are as sharp as those of his “bird-friends” for there is little that escapes Loore’s notice for long. To look at him, you would not suspect that he knows tidings of almost everything of any importance that happens between the rivers.

### NOTABLE PLACES

#### The Running River

Pouring from out of the Front Gate of Erebor before tumbling around Dale, the River Running flows south through the Long Lake and past the eastern borders of Mirkwood, before turning south-east across the wide open plains of the Nether Marches where it is joined by the Redwater. From there it continues hundreds of miles until it reaches the inland Sea of Rhûn, beyond the edge of Rhovanion.

Called ‘the Celduin’ by the Elves, the river has long been a vital trade route with the east, in particular between Esgaroth and Dorwinion. It is wide and fast flowing for most of its length, with few places to easily cross it; many who have sought to swim across have found themselves swiftly swept away by the cold waters.

#### The Redwater

Named for the deep red of its waters that speak of iron-rich soil washed out of the Iron Hills, the Redwater flows south strong and swift until it joins with the River Running, before flowing on to the Sea of Rhûn. It offers a swift route to southern lands, where both Dwarves of the Iron Hills and the Men of Dale trade with merchants from Dorwinion and farther East.

#### Riverstead

At the confluence of the Running River and the Redwater lies a small town consisting of many docks, a tavern, and little else. A seemingly temporary settlement of far-travelled traders, the majority of Riverstead’s ‘buildings’ are large tents that come and go with the seasons. In Riverstead, East and West meet, for here bold merchants from Lake-town and Dale trade to get the freshest or rarest wares from the East: the famed wines of Dorwinion, beautiful brightly coloured cloths, rare fruits and savoury spices.

The *Clever Fish* is Riverstead's sole formal tavern (for a great deal of drinking goes on in various tents). Its proprietor, Ai, is a Dwarf, supposedly from the Iron Hills, but he neither answers, nor asks, questions of his customers. Here, far out on the edge of the Wild, deals are made regularly over the very best of libations. While many are simple contracts for goods, the *Clever Fish* has hosted many a spy or agent passing information onto others who will carry it far from here.

### The Crossings of Celduin

There has been a settlement by the River Running for as long as men have travelled this land, sited on one side of a narrow, arching stone bridge built by the Men of the South long ago. This bridge is the only place to easily cross the river; a fact the folk of Celduin know all too well – all who cross it are tolled heavily. The town takes its name from the Elven name for the river, and even today it is sometimes visited by the fair folk as they travel to Dorwinion, far downriver.

Other river traders, less exotic than the Elves but no less vital, ply the River Running between Esgaroth and Dorwinion far more regularly than they once did. While the Master of Celduin cannot toll them for using the bridge, he does still charge them to tie up at the quays. For all its trade, the Crossings of Celduin remains in a precarious

position; it is far from civilisation, and should servants of the Enemy seek to force a crossing here there is little the townsfolk could do to stop them. While Erik, the Master of Celduin, does his best to resist the influence of Dale, he is not averse to enticing willing companies of adventurers to operate out of his town, in the hope of gaining something of their protection.

The Crossings of Celduin is described in more detail on page 116 of *Wilderland Adventures*.

### The Netherwood

On the western borders of the Nether Marches is a stretch of woodland where the trees seem unmoved by the breeze. Many birds roost under its eaves, but no beast on four (or two!) legs is ever seen coming out of it, nor prowling its edges. Travellers following the river to the Iron Hills prefer not to find refuge under the boughs of the forest, as stories tell of cold eyes staring out of the darkness of the wood.

Those few who entered the Netherwood have spoken of a lingering sense of unease, as if the woodland itself was sitting in quiet madness, and of a broken ring of stones placed there not by the hands of Men. In these darkening days, stories tell of those who fled to the farthest reaches of their land from Smaug the Golden, only to perish alone and mad within the wood.





# CONCERNING - DRAGONS -

*“My armour is like tenfold shields, my teeth are swords, my claws spears, the shock of my tail a thunderbolt, my wings a hurricane, and my breath death!”*

There is no one among the Free Folk who has not heard tales of the Great Worms. Even the sheltered Hobbits of the Shire know a thing or two about Dragons: vast serpents with terrible sharp claws and iron scales, who breathe fire and hoard gold. Be careful if you should ever speak to one, the stories go, for they are wicked and cunning. While most of that is true, it does not even begin to scratch the surface of what Dragons are...

The Great Enemy, Morgoth, bred the first Great Dragons in the pits of his northern fortress, Thangorodrim, during the First Age. They were meant to be unleashed as a bane upon the Elves, Dwarves and Men, in Morgoth's endless war for domination over all others. Whence they first came, none can say. Perhaps Morgoth brought their ancestors up from deep beneath the earth or from out of the trenches of the sea.

Wherever they began originally, the Great Dragons became far more than mere monsters; the most learned among the Wise believe that Morgoth summoned terrible spirits of fire from the timeless Void and bound them into the Dragons' flesh. Others hold that he imbued the gigantic creatures with some portion of his own fiery will, making them living vessels of his malice.

Whatever the truth, it became clear from the onset that Morgoth had, perhaps, wrought them too well or far too like himself, for the malevolence of the firstborn, the Father of Dragons, was so great that he was beyond the Enemy's control and he did not always heed what his creator demanded of him.

## THE GREAT WORMS

In the beginning, the Father of Dragons and others of his brood resembled gigantic serpents, with clawed limbs. It

was only later, during the final battle of the First Age, that Morgoth perfected his beasts, and sent forth Dragons with wings. When the Dark Lord was defeated and the world was broken, many of the Great Worms were slain. But enough of them survived to carry on, sleeping long ages beneath the mountains, emerging to slay one another and breed in the Northern Wastes.

Eventually, some Great Worms slipped south, to the region now known as the Withered Heath. There, the Great Dragons have endured the long millennia since their creation, even though the long sleep has diminished many of them and no few have fallen to famous heroes.

Most Dragons have at least four limbs, though there have always been rumours of some with more, and a few with none, these being, perhaps, the origins of sea serpents. Otherwise their features vary, depending on their breed. The Dragons of the line of Ancalagon the Black, for example, of whom Smaug the Golden was a distant descendant, have massive wings and the ability to breathe fire; those of the line of Scatha have long, serpentine bodies; while those that plagued the Dwarf-holds of the Grey Mountains in great numbers are usually wingless and can spit jets of bitterly cold poisonous fumes. Based on these differing characteristics, scholars and lore-masters distinguish between at least three separate breeds: Cold-drakes, Fire-drakes, and Long-worms.

Despite their diversified exterior appearance though, all Great Dragons share many common features, and above all is the fact that while the might of their bodies may seem great and terrible, their true power resides rather in the evil spirit or essence that dwells within them. It is thanks to this inner strength that their baleful gaze, or their Dragon-fire or poisonous breath can harm even incorporeal beings like wraiths or ghosts, or destroy materials thought imperishable, such as magically wrought artefacts (of the seven Dwarven Rings of Power, it is said several were consumed by Dragon-fire).

All Dragons can sleep for long centuries. In fact, they enter a state of lethargy when prey sufficient for their great hunger is scarce. If they slumber for too long, their power can diminish, leading to a decrease in size and power, but no Dragon has ever died of old age. In their sleep, Great Worms are still somewhat aware of the world about them,

dreaming strange Dragon-dreams that give them glimpses of the lands beyond their lairs and events of import in the wide world. They can even sleep with one eye half open, if they have a need. When they awaken, either because they have been disturbed by intruders entering their lair, or by some ill-boding Dragon-dream, the Great Worms tend to gorge themselves to restore their lost strength as soon as possible, eating whole flocks of livestock or a village worth of people, if they can.

Not even the wisest lore-master can say why Dragons hoard gold and other precious things; they seem to have no practical use for them, nor do they generally care for skilled craft over gaudy works (although they always seem to know what even the least item in their hoard is worth).

It is true that the gems of Smaug's trove eventually gave him a wondrous diamond waistcoat after long years spent sleeping on them, but few Great Worms ever had a hoard like Smaug's, and yet none of them can resist the lure of plunder or the scent of gold. Perhaps they enjoy the thought that they cause pain and envy in others with their treasures; mayhap their greed is but an echo of Morgoth's lust for the Silmarils.

Dragons have always lived in the North; none have been seen in the south, even when they were far less rare than they are at the end of the Third Age. Many sages have offered

up reasons why, but one thought is considered likely to be closest to the mark: Dragons do not suffer bondage gladly. To pass south is to risk drawing the attention of Mordor; having suffered the chains of Morgoth, they will not risk the chains of Sauron.

## HATCHING A DRAGON

*There were lots of Dragons in the North in those days...*

In *Adventures in Middle-earth*, Great Worms should be unique monsters, and confronting one should be the climax of an entire campaign. A company of heroes might spend many long years studying a Dragon, staking out its lair, attempting to glean some sign of weakness to exploit, or searching for a weapon that might give them some small advantage. A Dragon is not idly slain and its hoard easily looted; facing one will likely be the highlight of a hero's entire adventuring career – or the end of it.

The following sections contain rules and guidelines for a Loremaster to create their own Dragon. This level of customisation is well suited to the fact that a Great Worm should be a major adversary in a campaign. When deciding to include a Dragon in his campaign, the Loremaster might also like to turn their attention to their Magical Treasure Index (see *Rivendell*, page 97, as well



as page 96 onwards of this chapter), perhaps including within it some weapon or armour for the companions to employ in the final, climactic fight. After these rules, several ready-made Dragons are also included to offer inspiration and ideas when creating your own Great Worm.

The breeding of Dragons is a formidable task, especially as each Dragon is an individual. Any Great Worm will make a strong impact on your *Adventures in Middle-earth* game, and each step along the way should be carefully considered. Dragons possess not only considerable physical strength and powerful abilities but they also have a cunning evil about them and might manipulate their foes before devouring them. There are five steps to the process:

- **Step 1: Choose Age and Breed.** The Loremaster determines the attribute values and baseline Challenge Rating for the Dragon.
- **Step 2: Define Personality.** The LM then sets Motivation, Expectations and roleplaying quirks.
- **Step 3: Choose Actions and Features.** The LM selects a number of special powers for the Dragon and completes the entries for the Dragon's stat block.
- **Step 4: Lair and Hoard.** For older Dragons, the LM creates a place of safety where the Dragon stores its treasure and occasionally takes its rest.
- **Step 5: Name and Backstory.** The final step allows the LM to round out the Dragon's history and define its goals in the campaign.

### The Long Sleep of Dragons

While both *Raenar* and the *Forest Dragon* are used as examples for this process, each has appeared before in *Adventures in Middle-earth*. In those releases, the Dragons had recently awoken from a slumber that might have lasted centuries and had not yet regained their full stature and abilities.

The examples in this chapter detail each Dragon as it is at the height of its majesty, after it has eaten its fill and disposed of any troublesome heroes that sought to slay it.

#### STEP 1: CHOOSE AGE AND BREED

The life of Dragons is long and slow, and they get more powerful as they get older. When they are Dragonets new from the shell they are tender and vulnerable, and they seldom leave their place of birth before their hide hardens. It takes decades for them to reach adulthood, if not centuries, and many centuries more for them to be considered old, at the peak of their strength and power.

#### Age

A Dragon's age determines its starting attribute values, which will also be modified by its breed. It also determines their Natural Armour. See the table below.

AGE	STRENGTH	DEXTERITY	CONSTITUTION	INTELLIGENCE	WISDOM	CHARISMA	NATURAL ARMOUR
Dragonet	16	18	16	14	12	12	16
Young	18	20	18	14	13	14	17
Full-Grown	22	20	20	15	14	16	19
Venerable	24	18	22	15	15	18	19
Ancient	28	16	24	17	17	20	21*

\*The characteristics given above for an Ancient Dragon consider a specimen that has awoken recently, after a long period of slumber, and are considered minimums. The power of a fully-awakened old Great Dragon that has had enough time and sufficient store of victims to feed to full growth are left to the Loremaster, but should be appropriately monstrous.

## Breed

This choice defines the bloodline of the creature you are creating. Is your Great Worm a Fire-drake descended from Ancalagon the Black, like Smaug the Terrible? Or is it of the line of Scatha, a great Long-worm? Perhaps it is a Cold-drake, like Raenar, the slayer of Dáin the First? This choice is going to affect the appearance of the creature, its capability for flight, modify its basic attributes and the range of special features it can choose from (see Step 3), and define the skills and saving throws with which it is usually proficient.

### Cold-drakes

Some among the Wise say that Cold-drake is but a Fire-drake whose fire has died out over the long centuries. Others say that they are the original creations of Morgoth made in forms both winged and wingless, and given powerful limbs and long tails. Most of them can spit poison at their foes, or crush them with their fangs and claws. Raenar, the Scourge of the North is a great Cold-drake (see *Wilderland Adventures*, page 137).

**Ability Scores:** Constitution +2, Wisdom -2

**Saving Throws:** Constitution, Intelligence, Wisdom

**Skills:** History, Intimidation, Perception

**Speed:** 30 ft

*Raenar is a Venerable Cold-drake. His attributes are: Strength 24, Dexterity 18, Constitution 24, Intelligence 15, Wisdom 13, Charisma 18. He is proficient in Constitution, Intelligence and Wisdom saving throws and the History, Intimidation and Perception skills.*

### Fire-drakes

Held by many to be the mightiest of the Great Dragons, Fire-drakes are probably the most ancient breed, their line going back to the Great Worm of Angband. Rarely winged, when they fly they truly are a bane upon their enemies, as Smaug the Terrible demonstrated when he descended from the North. Somewhat slower-going and ponderous than the other breeds, fire burns beneath their scales and they can belch forth jets of searing flame.

**Ability Scores:** Strength +2, Dexterity -2, Constitution +2, Wisdom -2, Charisma +2

**Saving Throws:** Constitution, Wisdom, Charisma

**Skills:** Lore, Perception, Riddle

**Speed:** 20 ft

*Lytegan is a Young Fire-drake. She has Strength 20, Dexterity 18, Constitution 18, Intelligence 14, Wisdom 11 and Charisma 16.*

### Long-worms

Akin to Cold-drakes, Long-worms are huge, serpentine creatures, with short limbs and long necks and tails. No record exists of a winged Long-worm, and most seem to be furtive creatures, slithering stealthily out of their subterranean lairs to hunt for their prey. If provoked or cornered, a Long-worm may quickly abandon its caution, and unleash its fury to destroy everything in sight with its lashing tail and powerful jaws. Scatha, the Great Dragon of Ered Mithrin and Bane of the Northmen, was a Long-worm.

**Ability Scores:** Strength +2, Dexterity +2, Intelligence -2, Charisma -2

**Saving Throws:** Strength, Dexterity, Constitution

**Skills:** Athletics, Stealth, Survival

**Speed:** 30 ft, Climb 30 ft

*The Forest Dragon is a Full-grown Long-worm. She starts with Strength 24, Dexterity 22, Constitution 20, Intelligence 13, Wisdom 14 and Charisma 14.*

### Final Customisation

Every worm is unique and not entirely defined by its age and breed. Raise two of the Dragon's attributes by 2 and then improve any attribute by 1. Instead of raising an attribute by 2, you can instead thicken the Dragon's hide and increase its Natural Armour by 1. Furthermore, most Dragons have darkvision to 60 ft or more and know a variety of languages (your choice).

*Raenar the Venerable Cold-Drake trades in both opportunities to raise an attribute by 2 and increases his Armour Class to 21 instead. He then raises his Wisdom to 14.*

*Lytegan decides to increase her Armour Class by 1 (to 18) and puts both other advances into Strength, ending up with a mighty 23.*

*The Forest Dragon advances her Wisdom and Charisma by 2 each and her Intelligence by 1.*

## Dragon Aging

The eldest Dragons are uncountably ancient and even a Young Dragon may take centuries to become Full Grown. If you wish your heroes to meet a Dragon at two different age categories, there are likely to be many, many Fellowship phases between the two encounters. However, if such a thing happens, simply compare the two entries on the age table and modify each stat by the difference in the two lines.

*For example, when Lytegan is Full-Grown, she will advance her Strength by 4 (to 27), her Constitution and Charisma by 2 each, and her Intelligence and Wisdom by 1. She will also gain more Draconic abilities (see Step 3) which might affect both her Armour Class and attacks.*



## STEP 2: DEFINE PERSONALITY

Dragons have deep and complex personalities, especially older ones. They are invariably wicked and greedy, but all develop their own peculiar feeding habits and idiosyncrasies, dislikes and preferences. In many ways they can be compared to very old men or women who have lived isolated lives and become cantankerous and set in their ways. Long-worms are known for their caution and guile, whilst Cold-drakes develop strong pride and patience as they often outlive their enemies. Though all breeds are known for their lust, greed and cunning these dark qualities are at their greatest in the evil hearts of the Fire-drakes.

By taking the time to define the personality and character of your Dragon – just as you would for any other character or villain in your campaign – you can create a much more memorable encounter when the company finally meets it.

Before they ever encounter it face to face, the Company might already know something of a Dragon's character, for its personality is likely to affect the manner in which it hunts and the place in which it has made its lair.

To define the personality of your Great Worm, you should also select its Motivation, one or more positive Expectations and one or more negative Expectations. To round out its personality, select one or two Distinctive Qualities from those given on pages 122-142 in the *Adventures in Middle-earth Player's Guide*. The following traits are particularly suitable for a Dragon to possess: Bold, Cautious, Clever, Cunning, Curious, Determined, Eager, Elusive, Energetic, Lordly, Patient, Proud, Reckless, Secretive, Suspicious, Vengeful, Wary, Wilful, Wrathful. While some traits naturally lend themselves to the personality of a Dragon more than others, give some consideration to less obvious traits. What might a True-hearted or Merciful Dragon be like, for example? Rare, one could certainly say, but certainly memorable.

### MOTIVATION

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 | I hold my freedom dearest of all. Any who would rob me of it would feel my wrath.   |
| 2 | I esteem my hoard above any other splendor in Middle-earth. Any who would treat with me must be generous.                 |
| 3 | My reputation is most important. My name should chill hearts and make stout warriors shiver!                              |
| 4 | Even more than gold, I value my progeny. Those who would slay my children will face my fury.                              |
| 5 | I am more clever than any other creature, and will gladly prove it. Duel me in a battle of wits and I will be the victor. |
| 6 | Nothing in this world can quench the fire that burns inside. I am always hungry.  |

### POSITIVE EXPECTATIONS

1	Flattery is expected. But well-executed flattery will keep you alive a little longer.
2	Good manners are essential. Whenever feasible, one should try to eat the rude first.
3	Riddles are a way for me to prove my cleverness. Those who challenge me are worthy to speak with me.
4	You are correct to be generous. Place your gifts over there, next to the bones of my last visitors.
5	We can discuss matters over dinner. Oh? You intended that I eat the cow and not the Dwarf? Very well, dessert can wait.
6	I know the scent of Dwarf, Elf and Man, but there is a strange air here and I would know more. (Most Dragons have never met a Hobbit before or might otherwise become intrigued by another equally strange and unfamiliar thing.)

### NEGATIVE EXPECTATIONS

1	Never refuse to answer one of my questions.
2	Thieves and tricksters will not be tolerated.
3	You are tiny and insignificant, not worthy of judging me! (Every Dragon believes in its heart that they are the greatest specimen of their kind.)
4	You are sadly misinformed and should recognise my greater knowledge. (To contradict a Dragon or suggest it is wrong in any way is to invite death.)
5	You are a wretched folk, surely you do not speak for the whole company? (Even the most open-minded Dragon will not be happy with an Elf or Dwarf as the Company's speaker.)
6	YOU DARE DEFY ME? (Dragons do not take well to any threats from their audience.)

## STEP 3: CHOOSE ACTIONS AND FEATURES

A Dragon's arsenal of weapons is extensive, and though each may differ widely based on breed, they all share deadly common traits determined by their stature.

Specific Draconic Features can be chosen later in this section for your worm. The table opposite gives the characteristics for a Dragon of each age.

### Size

This entry gives the size category for the Dragon. Keep this in mind as you determine where it makes its lair and how it interacts with its environment.

*Both The Forest Dragon and Raenar are Huge creatures, while Lytegan is Large.*

### Hit Points

This is the average starting amount of hit points for the Dragon, which is then modified by its Constitution modifier. Multiply the number of Hit Dice by the Dragon's Constitution modifier, then add that value to the corresponding Hit Points value in the **Characteristics** table.

*As a Venerable Dragon, Raenar starts with 136 hit points. He has 21 hit dice and a Constitution modifier of +7 for 147 additional hit points. Raenar has a total of 283 (21d12+147) hit points.*

### Proficiency Bonus

The Dragon's Proficiency Bonus affects its attack bonus, saving throws, skills, and certain special features.

### Bite

A Dragon can make a Bite attack as an action. The Bite attack has a reach of 10 ft and deals piercing damage. The attack modifier for this attack is equal to the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus plus their Strength or Dexterity modifier (whichever is higher). The damage dealt is equal to the value given in the **Characteristics** table plus the ability score modifier of the ability used to make the attack.

*Lytegan's Strength is 23 (+6) and her Proficiency Bonus is +3. Thus her Bite attack has a +9 attack modifier and does 15 (2d8+6) piercing damage.*

## CHARACTERISTICS BY DRAGON AGE

AGE	SIZE	HIT POINTS	PROFICIENCY BONUS	BITE	REND	TAIL-LASH	FEATURES	CHALLENGE RATING
Dragonet	Medium	27 (6d8)	+2	1d8	2d4	—	3	3
Young	Large	66 (12d10)	+3	2d8	2d6	—	5	6
Full-Grown	Huge	117 (18d12)	+4	3d8	2d8	1d12	7	12
Venerable	Huge	136 (21d12)	+5	4d8	2d10	1d12	9	15
Ancient	Gargantuan	250 (24d20)	+7	5d8	2d12	1d20	13	21

**Rend**

A Dragon can make a Rend attack as an action. The Rend attack has a reach of 10 ft and deals slashing damage. The attack modifier for this attack is equal to the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus plus their Strength modifier. The damage dealt is equal to the value given in the **Characteristics** table plus the Dragons Strength modifier.

*The Forest Dragon's Strength is 24 (+7) and her Proficiency Bonus is +4. Her Rend attack has a +11 attack modifier and does 16 (2d8+7) slashing damage.*

**Tail-Lash**

A Full-Grown Dragon (or older) can make a Tail-Lash attack as an action. The Tail-Lash attack has a reach of 10 ft and deals bludgeoning damage. The attack modifier for this attack is equal to the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus plus their Strength or Dexterity modifier (whichever is higher). The damage dealt is equal to the value given in the **Characteristics** table plus the ability score modifier of the ability used to make the attack. If the target is Large or smaller, it must succeed on a Strength saving throw (DC 8 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus + its Strength modifier) or be knocked prone.

*Raenar also has a Strength of 24 (+7) but a Proficiency Bonus of +5. His Tail-Lash attack has a +12 attack modifier and does 13 (1d12+7) bludgeoning damage to the target in addition to knocking them Prone.*

**Features**

Each Dragon has a certain number of Features, based on its age. The Loremaster can use these Features to give a Dragon access to unique powers and traits or allow them to take additional actions in combat. Each Dragon is required to take the Weak Spot Feature, which does not count towards its total number of Features. If the Dragon takes one of the Broken, Craven or Scarred Features, it may take another Feature at the same time for no extra cost. You may only do this once.

Certain Features are **Deadly** and count as two Features for calculation purposes. If you choose a Feature marked as Legendary it does not count towards the total but you must take the Legendary Feature once for each indicated Feature. You may also select Legendary to perform a basic attack action (**Bite, Rend, Tail-Lash**) as well, see page 90.

You can take each Feature only once, with the exception of Legendary and Multiattack (see page 90). Some Features are only available to certain Breeds (Acid-bile has the requirement **Cold-drakes only**, for example). The following section provides a listing and explanation of all Features.

*To begin, Raenar must take the Weak Spot feature. He then selects Horrible Strength, Multiattack and Draconic Resistance, for a total of 3 Features). He takes the Legendary*

feature twice, bringing his total features to 5. Lastly, he selects *Mesmerise* and *Poison Blast*, both of which are *Deadly* and count as 2 Features each. This brings his total abilities to 9.

### Challenge Rating

This is the default Challenge rating for a Dragon of this age category. Loremasters might wish to adjust this depending on the exact Features selected, or if they reduce or increase the total number of Features or other values for the Dragon.

*In Raenar's first appearance he was half-starved and stiff from his long sleep. His Constitution was reduced and the reach of some of his melee attacks was restricted. His Challenge rating was reduced to 14 to account for these modifications.*

### A Foe Beyond Any of You

Most of the monsters presented in the Loremaster's Guide and subsequent publications have 'room to grow' included in their statlines — it's expected that LMs might add some extra features to tweak the monster to present a new and exciting challenge for their Company (though if your group is more academic in nature, even the most common Orc, Warg or Troll might be a suitable challenge). However, Dragons don't fit into this general rule — they are likely to feature as the primary antagonist of a campaign and the heroes might spend much time and effort in preparing themselves for any encounter with a Great Worm. Loremasters should carefully foreshadow the deadly powers of a Dragon and, if their Company has an early meeting with such a foe, perhaps provide a graceful way to escape to fight another day.

### Draconic Features

The following Features are the most suitable for Dragons. Some of these Features have appeared in other *Adventures in Middle-earth* products and are repeated here for convenience, others are wholly new and unique to the Great Worms. Some Features have requirements, such as the Dragon being of a particular breed or possessing

another Feature. Requirements are listed in parentheses next to the Feature name. You can add other features not listed here to your Dragon if it fits your conception of your Great Worm.

**Acid-bile (Deadly, Cold-drakes only).** Some of the most ancient of the Cold-drakes have particularly potent breath weapons. As an action, the Dragon exhales acidic bile in 5 ft wide line, with a length equal to 10 ft times the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus. Each creature in that line must make a Dexterity saving throw (DC 13 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus) taking 3d6 acid damage per point of its Proficiency Bonus on a failed save, and half as much damage on a successful one.

*For example, a Dragon who takes this Feature and has a Proficiency Bonus of +4 would have an Acid-bile attack that has a 5 ft wide line, and 40 ft long. Each creature in the area of effect must make a **DC 17 Dexterity** saving throw, taking 42 (12d6) acid damage on a failed saving throw or half as much on a successful one.*

**Armour of Tenfold Shields (Deadly).** There is perhaps nothing stronger, nor more impervious than Dragon-hide. This Dragon is immune to all non-magical piercing and slashing damage.

**Baleful Gaze.** As a reaction, when a creature the Dragon can see makes an ability check, the Dragon may impose disadvantage on the roll. The creature must be able to see the Dragon and the Dragon must not be Incapacitated for this effect to apply.

**Blazing Wrath (Fire-drakes only, requires Fire Breath).** Add 3 ft times its Proficiency Bonus to the Dragon's cone size for its Fire Breath attack and increase the damage of their Fire Breath by 1d6 per point of Proficiency Bonus.

*Lytegan has a Proficiency Bonus of +3. If she takes this Feature, her Fire Breath increases to a 39 ft cone and does a total of 42 (12d6) fire damage.*

**Broken.** This Dragon has suffered some calamitous inequity in the past and is now more cautious than its brethren. Pick an environmental feature or common occurrence (for example fire, water, Dwarves wielding



axes, Orcs bearing iron chains, etc.). While within 10 ft of the source, the Dragon has Disadvantage on its attack rolls.

**Craven.** If the Dragon starts its turn with less than half its total hit points, it must make a **DC 10 Wisdom** saving throw. On a failure, it becomes Frightened and must take the Dash or Disengage action to move away from any enemies. If movement is impossible, it must take the Dodge action instead.



**Crushing Tail-Grip (Long-worms only).** A Long-worm with this Feature can automatically Grapple a creature it hits with its **Tail-Lash** attack instead of knocking the target Prone (DC 10 + the Long-worm's Strength modifier to escape). If the Long-worm has Grappled a creature, it can use an action on subsequent turns to crush the Grappled creature with its tail. The damage inflicted by this attack is equal to the Dragon's Tail-Lash damage.

**Deadly Tail Grip (Long-worms only, Legendary, requires Crushing Tail-Grip).** A Long-worm with this Feature can use a Legendary action to inflict damage equal to its Tail-Lash damage to a creature it has Grappled.

**Draconic Resistance (Recharge 5-6).** Dragons are notoriously tough and free-willed. As a reaction, if the Dragon fails a saving throw, it can choose to succeed instead.

**Frightful Presence.** Each creature of the Dragon's choice that is aware of it and within 20 ft times the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus must succeed on a Wisdom saving throw or become Frightened for 1 minute (DC 13 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus). A creature can repeat the saving throw and the end of each of its turns, ending the effect on itself on a success. If a creature's saving throw is successful or the effect ends for it, the creature is immune to the Dragon's Frightful Presence for the next 24 hours.

**Fell Speed.** The Dragon may take a bonus action to Disengage and move up to its speed towards an enemy it can see.

**Fire Breath (Deadly, Fire-drakes only, Recharge 5-6).** As an action, the Dragon exhales fire in a cone equal to 10 ft times its Proficiency Bonus. Each creature in the area must make a Dexterity saving throw (DC 13 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus), taking 3d6 fire damage per point of its Proficiency Bonus on a failed save, or half as much damage on a successful one.

*Lytegan has a Proficiency Bonus of +3. Her Fire Breath attack affects an area in a 30 ft cone. Each creature in the area of effect must make a **DC 16 Dexterity** saving throw, taking 31 (9d6) fire damage on a failed saving throw, or half as much on a successful one.*

**Fleet of Wing (Requires Winged).** This Dragon is a particularly fast flyer. Add 30 ft of movement to its flying speed.

**Gem Waistcoat (Recharge 5-6).** The mightiest of Dragons find a new use for their vast hoard. As they slumber for centuries upon a mound of gems, these priceless artefacts become embedded in their soft underbellies. When a Dragon is the target of an opportunity attack due to

exposing its Weak Spot, it can use its reaction to negate the damage from a single attack.

**Gimlet Eyed.** The Dragon inflicts +2 damage on all damage rolls made at night or underground.

**Hatred (Elves or Dwarves) (Recharge 5-6).** Dragons have long memories and might bear animosity to the kin of those it has fought before. As a bonus action, the Dragon gains Advantage on attack rolls against the specified culture until the start of its next turn.

**Horrible Strength (Cold-drakes and Long-worms only).** Some Dragon-kind rely on brute strength more than others of their kind. If this Dragon makes a successful melee attack, it may use its bonus action to cause additional damage equal to its Strength modifier. This additional damage is of the same type as the original attack.

**Legendary.** If you take this Feature, the Dragon gains 1 Legendary action (up to a maximum of 3). When you take this Feature, you add one of the Dragon's basic attack actions, or a Feature that requires an action or reaction to the Dragon's list of Legendary actions. Using a Legendary action as a reaction does not consume the Dragon's normal reaction. Spent Legendary actions and reactions are regained at the start of the Dragon's turn.

*For example, a Dragon with the Deadly Tail Grip Feature must also take the Legendary Feature at least once, selecting Deadly Tail Grip. The Dragon can now use that Feature as a Legendary action. Taking the Legendary Feature a second time allows you to select a basic attack, such as Bite or Rend, or another Feature that uses the Dragon's action or reaction and add it to the Dragon's list of Legendary actions. The Dragon would then have 2 Legendary actions, which it can use for either ability.*

**Mesmerise (Deadly).** As an action, the Dragon targets one creature it can see within 30 ft of it. If the target can see the Dragon, it must make a Wisdom saving throw or be Charmed by it (DC 13 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus). Each time the Dragon or its allies does anything harmful to the target, it can repeat the saving throw, ending the effect on a success. Otherwise, the effect lasts 24 hours or until the Dragon leaves the area, is slain or takes a bonus action to end the effect.

**Multiattack.** The Dragon can make two basic attacks (**Bite**, **Rend** or **Tail-Lash**) with a single action. If you select Multiattack a second time, the Dragon makes three basic attacks with its action. You cannot select this Feature more than twice.

**Noxious Vapours (Deadly, Recharge 4-6).** As an action, the Dragon exhales a thick cloud of foul fumes in a cone equal to 5 ft times its Proficiency Bonus. Each creature within the cone must make a Constitution saving throw (DC 13 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus). On a failure, a creature is Blinded and Poisoned for 1d4+1 rounds. On a success the target is Poisoned for 1d4+1 rounds.

*Raenar has a Proficiency Bonus of +5. If he takes this ability, the attack would have a 25 ft cone and a DC 18 Constitution saving throw.*

**Piercing Words (Legendary).** As a Legendary action, the Dragon can force a hidden creature to make a Wisdom saving throw (DC 15 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus). On a failure, the creature reveals itself to the Dragon. The Dragon must be able to infer the presence of the creature in some way (for example, it can hear the creature or it was in sight recently) in order to use this ability.

**Poison Blast (Cold-drakes only, Deadly, Recharge 3-6).** As an action, the Dragon spits forth a jet of poisonous bile in a cone equal to 10 ft times its Proficiency Bonus. Each creature in that area must make a Dexterity saving throw (DC 13 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus), taking 1d4+5 poison damage per point of its Proficiency Bonus and is Poisoned for 2d4 rounds on a failed save. On a success it takes half damage and is Poisoned for 1d4 rounds on a successful one.

*Raenar has a Proficiency Bonus of +5. His Poison Blast is a 50-ft cone. Each creature in the area of effect must make a DC 18 Dexterity saving throw, taking 37 (5d4+25) poison damage and becoming Poisoned for 2d4 rounds on a failed saving throw. A successful saving throw reduces the damage by half, and the target is Poisoned for only 1d4 rounds.*

**Region-dweller (Long-worms only, Recharge 5-6).** These Dragons spend long years exploring every nook and cranny of their chosen territory, such as the desolation

of the Waste or the broken lands of the Withered Heath. Choose a region of Middle-earth. As long as they are in their region, they gain half-cover from any combat scenery, even if the feature would not normally provide it.

**Savage Assault.** When the Dragon rolls a natural 18 or 19, it may make an additional melee attack against the same opponent as a bonus action.

**Scaly Hide (cannot take Tough Hide).** This Dragon's tough scales provide resistance to non-magical bludgeoning and piercing damage.

**Sinister Speech (Deadly).** As an action, the Dragon can choose to address its enemies with evil words. Any intelligent creature that can hear the Dragon and understand it must make a Wisdom saving throw (DC 13 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus) or suffer Disadvantage when attacking the Dragon. A creature affected by this Feature can repeat the saving throw at the end of its turn, ending the effect on a success.

**Smiting Malice (Deadly, Recharge 5-6).** Some of the most ancient Dragons have such a force of will that they can overwhelm lesser creatures with just a glance. As an action, the Dragon can target a creature within 120 ft of it that can see it. The creature must succeed on a Charisma saving throw (DC 15 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus) or become Paralysed. At the end of the creature's turn it can repeat the saving throw, ending the effect on a success.

**Snake-like Speed. (Recharge 5-6).** This Dragon is adept at avoiding injury and can use its reaction to halve the damage on an attack that it is aware of.

**Stench.** Any creature other than the Dragon that starts its turn within 5 ft of the Dragon must succeed on a Constitution saving throw or be Poisoned until the start of its next turn (DC 13 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus). On a success, the creature is immune to the Dragon's Stench for 1 hour.

**Thing of Terror (1/day).** The Dragon can use its bonus action to rear up and display its full strength. Each creature within 60 ft of the Dragon that can see it must make a Wisdom saving throw (DC 15 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus) or be Frightened of it until the end of its next turn.

**Tough Hide (cannot take Scaly Hide).** The Dragon has thick layers of scaly skin. It is resistant to non-magical bludgeoning and slashing damage.

**Wing Attack (Legendary, requires Winged).** As a Legendary action, the Dragon beats its wings. Each creature within 15 ft of it must make a Dexterity saving throw (DC 13 + the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus) or take bludgeoning damage (2d6 + the Dragon's Strength modifier) and be knocked Prone. The Dragon can then fly up to half its flying speed.

**Weak Spot (all Dragons must take this ability).** "Every worm has its weak spot," Bilbo's father said. It is said that the doom of Dragon-kind is that, despite their tough scales, they have the soft underbelly of a snake. If a Dragon takes an action to use a Feature other than Multiattack, any heroes that are within range may use their reaction to make an opportunity attack. For this attack only, the Dragon loses all resistances and immunities and is vulnerable to Piercing, Slashing and Bludgeoning damage.

**Winged (Fire-drakes and Cold-drakes only).** Ancient Dragon-breeds were wingless, but most of the Fire-drakes and some of the Cold-drakes are possessed of wings that allow them to launch themselves into the sky, in order to bring terror from above. A winged Dragon gains a flying speed of 60 ft.

#### STEP 4: LAIR AND HOARD

To encounter a Dragon in the Wild is the worst twist of fortune imaginable, and one would be lucky to escape such a chance meeting uneaten, or at least unhurt. But to seek out a Dragon at home? That is either the height of bravery or foolishness, depending on who gets to tell the tale afterwards.

Dragons do not construct their lairs. Instead, they find a suitable location and then evict (or consume) any prior occupants. Dragons prefer lairs that are remote and defensible, such as a mountain cave or the deepest part of the forest. But the presence of treasure of any kind always calls to them and a Dragon may temporarily lair in a less suitable location if it is rich in gold and other valuables.

## Lair Actions

After finding their lair, Dragons spend many long years gathering their hoard and sleeping their strange Dragon-sleep. Eventually the lair takes on some aspects of the Dragon itself. If the Company approach a Dragon in its lair, you might wish to add one or more of the following lair actions to the ensuing battle:

d6	Lair Effects
1	Disorientating Mists
2	Echoes of Laughter
3	Freezing Fog
4	Smoke and Flame
5	Vile Odour
6	Unstable Ground

**Disorienting Mists.** If the Dragon takes this lair action, the chamber begins to fill with mists and vapours, either arising from the natural elements of the lair or perhaps the Dragon's heavy breath. Any creature (other than the Dragon) which moves on their turn has Disadvantage on attack rolls and any ability checks that rely on sight. This effect lasts for 1 round, after which the mists clear.

**Echoes of Laughter.** When the Dragon uses this lair action, the environment becomes extraordinarily loud and chaotic until the end of the round. It might be literal echoes of the Dragon's powerful voice or an environmental effect (a waterfall or landslip) that produces the cacophony. Each creature in the lair (other than the Dragon) must make a **DC 15 Constitution** saving throw or become Deafened and Stunned until the end of its turn.

**Freezing Fog.** Whether part of the environment or some Dragon-spell, a fog fills the chamber that seems to seep into the body, making bones ache and the heart weary. For the remainder of the round the first time a hero takes damage they gain a point of Shadow.

**Smoke and Flame.** When this lair action is taken, a wave of heat and stifling smoke passes through the lair. Each creature other than the Dragon must make a **DC 10 Constitution** saving throw or gain a level of Exhaustion. But even the strongest Fire-drake cannot produce flame

indefinitely, the Dragon cannot use this lair action two rounds in a row.

**Vile Odour.** The lair of a Dragon is filled with the noxious fumes of its kind. By taking this lair action, the Dragon causes these vapours to spread and each creature other than the Dragon must make a **DC 15 Constitution** saving throw. On a failure, the creature is Poisoned until the end of its next turn.

**Unstable Ground.** When the Dragon activates this lair ability, the ground itself trembles and shakes, perhaps with the stamping of its mighty feet or because the lair was built atop one of the shifting glaciers found in the northernmost parts of the Withered Heath. Each creature other than the Dragon must make a **DC 15 Strength** saving throw or become Prone.



## Regional Effects

The most powerful Dragons affect the very land around them, twisting it into a reflection of their heart.

**Desolation.** Dragons are marked by their greed and hunger. Around this Dragon's lair, everything is barren, and no game or easy shelter can be found for miles. This regional effect extends for a radius of two miles plus additional miles equal to the Dragon's Proficiency Bonus. Each day the heroes remain in the area of effect they must make a Corruption check, a **DC 15 Wisdom** saving throw, gaining a point of Shadow on a failure.

**Treacherous.** In the darkest dreams of Dragons, the magic of the Elder Days can stir and they can work a Dragon-spell over the area of their dominion. Every creature and even the rocks and trees themselves come under the influence of the great worm and serve as its spies. A Dragon with



this regional effect cannot be Surprised and makes its initiative roll for any combat with Advantage.

### Dragon Hoards

There is no hoard as spectacular as a Dragon hoard. Their greed is limitless and no amount of wealth is ever enough to slake their desire. However, there are some guidelines to use when determining what a particular Dragon's hoard should look like. A Dragon's age is the primary factor, as older worms have had more time to amass wealth and treasure.

The table opposite gives both the suggested rating for a hoard belonging to a Dragon of a certain age and how likely various items in it have been Touched by the Shadow (see page 92 of the *Rivendell Region Guide*). If the range given in this table is wider than the corresponding one for the Magical Treasure Result table then use it instead. For example, normally a Precious Object is only Touched by the Shadow on a 6. But the same treasure recovered from the hoard of a Venerable Dragon is Touched by the Shadow on a roll of 4-6 instead.

AGE	SUGGESTED HOARD RATING	TOUCHED BY THE SHADOW
Dragonet	10	—
Young	50*	6
Full-Grown	100**	5-6
Venerable	500**	4-6
Ancient	1000***	3-6

### Fancy Baubles

As a rule, Dragons know their hoard to an ounce, and few have much use for worthless trinkets. When making magical treasure rolls for a Dragon's hoard, you can substitute Fancy Baubles in for Worthless Trinkets. Like trinkets, they don't change the value of a hero's share of the treasure but instead just provide a bit more detail about the form that some of that wealth takes.

d20+d10	FANCY BAUBLES
2	A set of drinking cups accented with gold bands along the rims, and carved with images of hunters in the wilderness. These cups are made from ivory, possibly Oliphant tusk, and nest one within the other. Nearby is an ornately carved and gilded oak box with a cleverly wrought clasp that neatly holds the stacked cups.
3	A long skewer meant for a king's feast. While the shaft is made from stout iron and shows the stains of having roasted dozens of stags or other beasts, the ends are capped in gold and silver leaf over fine ceramic knobs. Somewhere around here is the frame that it rests in, and together they make a fine centrepiece for any hall.
4	A Mithril shield boss carved into the shape of a snarling beast, with bright ruby eyes. While no shield is attached, the rim of the boss is sound and can be used to form the centre of a new shield.
5	A skull that once belonged to some great beast, perhaps a lesser Dragon or other foul creature. The bone has been highly polished and the teeth and horns accented in gold and silver. A clever set of hinges and a lever allow the mouth to be opened, and inside the back of the head sits a horn made of silvered steel. If the mouth is opened and the horn sounded, a terrifying roar is produced.
6	A ewer of beaten gold over wood, chased in silver and large enough that a grown man could crawl inside and have room to turn around. The craftsmanship is crude, but effective in a primitive way.
7	A plain ebony box made of tight-fitting panels conceals a finely wrought lantern of stone with thin panes of rosy quartz. The lantern does not have a gate or door, nor is there an opening in the bottom to place a wick or oil. Through either ingenious manufacture or some small enchantment, the lantern enhances the light of whatever environment it is in, reflecting starlight at night and sunlight during the day.

- |    |  |
|----|--|
| 8  | A string of amber beads on gold thread that most likely came from a craftsman's workshop or a merchant's supply. They are unworked but finely polished, and are ready to be placed on jewellery or used to decorate clothing. The beads range in size from a fingernail to a fist, and are sorted on the string.   |
| 9  | A puzzle box made from dozens of strips of wood, each chosen for their complementary colours and laid in such a manner that a successful Riddle test is needed to open it. Inside is a sheaf of paper, a dozen golden quill nibs and a small glass jar embossed with images of fish and waterfowl chased in silver. The ink in the jar has long since dried to a fine dust, but the paper appears sound. |
| 10 | A bust of a long-dead king. While the material of the work is fine marble, the small statue is undecorated. Its wealth lies in its craftsmanship; for the carving is so fine one can see every whorl of hair, every wrinkle of the brow.   |
| 11 | Yards of chain, each link longer than a man's arm and nearly as thick. The links are made of precious metals, gold, silver, platinum and even Mithril, with electrum and other alloys in between. At each end of the great chain is a massive hook made of polished steel etched with scenes of Dwarfs at the forge.   |
| 12 | An egg, just a small, delicate, blue-white egg with a slight dappling of grey across the ends. The egg is enclosed in a cage of thin gold wire with sapphires and diamonds at every joint and join.  |
| 13 | Eight stone bowls of polished marble lay scattered about, their shapes worked to show off the red veins in the pale white stone. Each bowl is encircled in alternating bands of turquoise and gold.  |
| 14 | A necklace or other adornment that is made of carven beads strung together. Each bead is cut from semi-precious stones and engraved with a delicate script in the mode of Beleriand.   |
| 15 | A statuette of white marble, carved by Dwarven hands and of exceedingly high craft. Whoever is represented is from long ago and (unless they are a Wizard or an Elf) are unlikely to walk the wide world in these later days.  |
| 16 | A set of golden earrings made by some long-forgotten Easterling jewellsmith. Each earring is a trapezoid with an illustration of an Oliphaunt made with gold wire set into it, and gold chains hanging off the corners with turquoise weights wrapped in gold wire at their ends.  |
| 17 | A silver ceremonial dagger with a gemstone encrusted hilt. Careful inspection of the piece reveals that none of the stones are of exceptional value, nor would the weapon take an edge sharper than a Hobbit's letter-opener. It is simply for display or use in a long-forgotten ritual of an unknown people.   |
| 18 | A long wooden pipe carved with whorls and made from a single piece of wood. The mouthpiece is forged from silver-coated wood. The bowl is chased in gold, and tiny diamonds can be seen glinting in the eyes of the luxuriantly carved whorls. The pipe is long enough for the smoker, when seated, to rest the bowl upon the ground.  |
| 19 | A large and ornately decorated lintel for a doorway or gate. This massive piece of gold leaf laid over granite features a dozen small sunken squares, each with a carved scene. A <b>DC 15 Intelligence (Lore)</b> check reveals that the scenes are from the history of an important Dwarven family, showing the first five generations and the accomplishments of the family's greatest members.       |
| 20 | A stone doorpost of smooth granite and covered with scores of small horizontal lines filled with gold. Each line has a name and year carved next to it in the secret Dwarvish script. The names repeat, but at increasingly higher lines. Some of the names are hard to read for the post is heavily scarred by Dragon-fire.   |



21	A huge two-handled cup of Númenórean make. It is easily too large for one man to lift and can hold at least three gallons of drink. The cup is made of silver, artfully cast in one piece with intricate designs showing great ships crossing the ocean. Inside a massive kraken is carved on the bottom, with its tentacles flowing up the inside of the cup to pour out and form the handles.
22	A golden harp with silver strings, still magically in tune. It is sized for a Dwarf, though any hero can use it. A hero proficient in such musical instruments gains Advantage on any checks made with it.
23	A cloak pin wrought from a single knapped piece of quartz and reinforced with bands of gold. The point of the pin is tipped in steel. Upon the face of the pin is a carving of a heron taking flight, its wings forming the body of the pin. The spring is cleverly constructed to lie inside the quartz and yet not be visible through it.
24	A book with covers of thin wood, painted and traced with gold and silver in a geometric pattern. The pages within are soft vellum and contain a variety of illustrations and text written by a graceful hand. It seems to be a history of the local lands but the language is unknown or obscured by some secret code.
25	A water-spout that once was part of a grand fountain, carved from some dark stone. It takes the shape of a graceful swan with an arched neck and open mouth.
26	A bird made from platinum and gold, in the shape of a finch, with sparkling agate eyes and a beak made of silver. If tossed into the air, the bird flies in a great wide circle while singing its song, and then comes to rest in the hand of whoever released it.
27	A latticework of thin strips of darkly stained hardwood held together with silver hardware. When unfolded, it serves as a portable lectern or display for a book. Many a Hobbit genealogy or Dwarven record-book would be enhanced by such a beautiful stand.
28	A heavy golden bracelet, cast in the shape of two Dragons locked in mortal combat. Each Dragon is swallowing the other's tail in a fierce death grip. The two wingless Dragons are so alike as to be twin brothers but one has eyes of ruby and the other emerald.
29	A golden brooch in the shape of a large butterfly. The wings are multicoloured, formed by small flecks of precious stones set into the gold foiling. Those wise in animal-lore will know that such butterflies are only found in the southern lands and the story of how it found its way to a Dragon's hoard must be a long one.
30	A set of keys forged of a variety of precious metals. The keys range in size from those used to open a locket to a massive key that must have opened an equally massive lock and door. The larger keys are decorated with geometric designs of inlaid gemstone dust, precious metals and rare minerals.

### STEP 5. CHOOSE A NAME AND BACKSTORY

Last but not least, choose a name and a backstory appropriate to the characteristics you chose for your Great Worm. Names in the tongues of mortal Men are appropriate for monsters encountered in recent centuries, while Elvish names are fit for creatures that first plagued

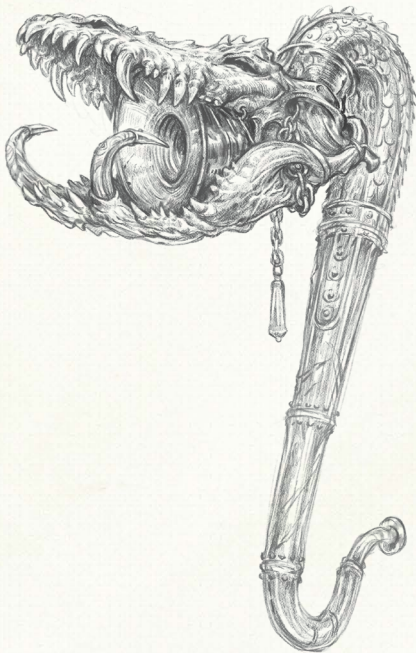
Middle-earth thousands of years ago. Consider that often a Dragon name is but an epithet, a title: Scatha means "enemy" or "robber", while Raenar means "plunderer". Smaug has its root in the verb "smugan", meaning to squeeze through a hole. Ancalagon is Sindarin for "Rushing Jaws" or "Biting-storm".

## HUNTING DRAGONS

...they began discussing Dragon-slayings historical, dubious, and mythical, and... the different arts, devices and stratagems by which they had been accomplished.

### TREASURES TO SLAY A DRAGON

While it is unlikely that the following items would appear in the hoard of a Dragon (unless they intend to guard the means of their own downfall closely), they are suitable for inclusion in the Magical Treasure Index of a campaign that features a Dragon as a prominent foe.



### Dragon-bane

In a past age, the Elves and the Dwarves found themselves with a common enemy and bent their prodigious skills to creating weapons that might slay a Great Worm. In the Third Age, such weapons are all but lost, in no small part due to the efforts of the Dragons themselves.

- A Legendary Weapon of either Elven or Dwarven Craftsmanship may have Dragons selected as its Bane creature, as described on page 133 of the  *Loremaster's Guide*.

### Dragon-scale Brooch

A small brooch fashioned from part of a Dragon's scale, supposedly from Scatha himself. (Contains a Greater Blessing of Riddle, see page 127 of the  *Loremaster's Guide*.)

### The Black Arrow of Bard

**Type:** Arrow

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven (Erebor)

**Banes:** Dragons

**Enchanted Qualities:** 1. Sure Shot 2. Superior Keen 3. Superior Fell

**Notes:** Said to have been forged in the Lonely Mountain, the Black Arrow was passed down the line of Girion until Bard the Bowman slew Smaug with it. Whether this is that same arrow is unknown, although many a Barding would claim it was so.

### Scatha's Tooth

**Type:** Axe

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven (Erebor)

**Banes:** —

**Enchanted Qualities:** 1. Gleam of Terror 2. Fell 3. Curse of Weakness (Dragon-sickness)

**Notes:** When Fram slew the Dragon Scatha, he took his hoard as his own, much to the dismay of the Dwarves of the Grey Mountains. As recompense he sent them a handful of the Dragon's teeth, one of which is embedded in the haft of this axe. Although the blade strikes true, something of the Dragon's greed remains about it.

### Biting-storm

**Type:** Great Spear

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven and Elven (Khazad-dûm and Eregion)

**Banes:** Dragon

**Qualities:** 1. Superior Grievous 2. Fierce (see page 30)

**Notes:** Forged in Khazad-dûm and wound with the spells of the Elves of Eregion, Biting-storm was fashioned with one purpose in mind: to pierce the heart of a terrible Dragon, whose name has long been lost to legend.





## MEETING A DRAGON

It's possible to have an audience with a Dragon. After all, the famous Bilbo Baggins had a rather nice conversation with Smaug – at least before the Dragon tried to incinerate him! Naturally, the success of the task will depend on how the conversation is led, and who will be doing the talking; Dwarves and Elves are no good as speakers for the Company, as most Dragons Mistrust or outright Hate them. The Dragon might simply see them as appetizers instead.

Talking to a Dragon is not quite the same as calling on others with positions of power, since few others are as inclined to dine on their guests as the Great Worms. Thus, the Introduction Check for the Audience requires a **DC 20 Intelligence (Traditions)** check instead of the normal **DC 15**. However, most Dragons are fond of riddling words and a speaker for the Company can choose to use Riddle instead of Traditions to both make introductions and conclude the meeting.

Failing an Audience with a Dragon can be catastrophic and lead to combat quickly. A Loremaster might judge the heroes to be Surprised, impose Disadvantage on their initiative checks or apply both effects simultaneously. Forethought and strategic planning can make sure that a Company calling upon a Great Worm has an escape plan ready, just in case.

The table below provides starting attitudes for Dragons dealing with various cultures. Note that Dragons are never visitors, they are always hosts, since none of the Great Worms would ever prostrate themselves before lesser beings.

CULTURE	DWARVES	ELVES	MEN	HOBBITS
ATTITUDE	Mistrust*	Mistrust*	Askance	Unknown

\* If the Dragon has Hatred for the specified culture, this is Hate instead. The Dragon will immediately attack the speaker and all further checks for the Audience are made with Disadvantage if combat does not ensue.

## RUMOURS OF DRAGONS

Dragons are creatures of dread and terror, but also creatures of wonder, living curiosities that some might dismiss as tales of yore or wild stories told by fools. Still, there might be truth in the rumours and legends surrounding Dragons, their lairs and their hoards.

These are things a Company might hear about Dragons should they seek out wisdom and lore concerning them. Not all of them are true, but some might well be.

1d20+1d4	RUMOUR
2	"It is rare that a Dragon should make slaves of lesser creatures, but some do. Mostly it is the lowest form of Goblin, but the corruption of Dragons might make even the wild animals that frequent the land about a worm's lair into its unwitting sentries."
3	"The mind of the Dragon is the true danger, for their thoughts are wicked and evil, so wicked and evil that they leak out and pollute the hearts of others. This wickedness does not end with their deaths; it lingers like a foul odour and taints all they touched."
4	"Should you seek the worm Brégnés, look not in the caves of the mountains nor in the depths of the forests. For she is a great thing of long body and no limbs save the two forepaws she drags herself along with. She is a burrowing creature, a worm that lives beneath the earth. She sleeps in old barrows, loots from those same tombs and lairs in a muddy pit filled with the grave goods of ancient heroes, and the mouldering remains of those same warriors of old."

- 5 “The sight, hearing and other senses of a Dragon are especially acute, but one must keep in mind that their memories are even sharper than their fangs. A Dragon knows by sight every item in its hoard no matter how small or how fleeting the first viewing was. Just so, they know this by its smell, its touch and its taste. Keep this in mind, for they will not forget any theft nor wrong nor slight, and will seek vengeance.”
- 6 “Dragons are creatures of greed, and can always be tricked by that same greed into rash actions and cunning traps.”
- 7 “The worm Eletredde was the first of a brood of three and fought her siblings to the death. Although in the end victorious, the broad curve of her horned head was damaged, so you will know her by her many broken horns. Between those stumps of horn is the place to lay your blow, for the armour of her hide and strength of her bone is weakest there.”
- 8 “The tales of worms are many, and they are creatures of great diversity. There are three types they say: those that spit poison, those that breathe fire, and then there are the ‘Cold-drakes’ that do neither.”
- 9 “There is a Dragon named Sticlas that lairs not far from here, or so the tales go. While it is true that there is no wasteland about its peak, smoke rises there from time to time and shepherds report a strange and terrible beast that comes down from the sky and gobbles up entire flocks, and shepherds too!”
- 10 “The only tale I have heard of Dragons is that of Hón daughter of Hanar and distant cousin to Grór brother of Thrór. Many long years ago, longer than even the coming of Smaug to Erebor, Hón journeyed into the Grey Mountains to seek revenge on the Dragon that had slain her father and kin. Now, she went alone, and was never heard from again, and let that be a lesson to you to never face a Dragon without stout companions. The thing to remember, though, is that she took with her the only item saved from her ancestral home from when the Dragon came, and that was an axe forged in the first days of Durin’s folk, an axe said to be so sharp it could cleave a column of smoke in twain.”
- 11 “In my grandfather’s youth his uncle told him that a Dragon swooped down and snatched up an entire caravan of merchants travelling from the East to Dale. Now, this was in the days before Smaug came to the Lonely Mountain. This caravan was loaded with wealth, for it was the desire of some Eastern king to purchase many finely wrought suits of armour from the Dwarves. What might have come of this treasure... or this Dragon?”
- 12 “It is well known by learned people that the Grey Mountains are rife with slumbering Dragons, but what is not known is why so many sleep now? Will they stir in time, perhaps at the call of some changing of the stars or the rise of some great master?”
- 13 “A Dragon must wake from its slumber from time to time to feast, and by watching for that moment, a brave warrior can sneak in and lay a trap.”
- 14 “None can taste the blood of a Dragon and live, for it is as a poison of fires that slays all save the mightiest of strength.”
- 15 “Whosoever might taste the heart of a Dragon would know all the tongues of Men and Elves, of birds and beasts.”
- 16 “Dragons are creatures of fire and stone, that is why they lair under mountains. If you plan to slay such a beast, do as good King Bard has done; take them on the wing and plunge them into water. Now, flushing the beast from its roost, that is the trick.”
- 17 “They say that a foul serpent of the line of Scatha crept silently into the forests of Mirkwood in the days when that dark wood was known as the Greenwood. Do not be deceived by those who say that a Necromancer lairs in Dol Guldur, it is a Dragon, of that I am certain.”



18	"There are many kinds of Dragons, and you may know them by their limbs. There are Dragons with no legs that slither like serpents, those with two legs that walk not like a man but like a great scaly bear, some with four or more legs, and those with wings. The last may have any number of limbs, though six is the normal amount."
19	"Of the land the Dragon resides in, it is always tainted and thus you may tell where they lair. Beware, though, for the taint of worms takes many forms and depends on the nature of the beast in question. Some cause such widespread destruction that the land is torn, burned, and ruined. Others send out their terrible thoughts and thus pollute the trees, animals, and even the rocks and streams."
20	"People speak of the greed of Dragons, but that is but a manifestation of the true nature of their taint, namely selfishness. To a worm, there is no more important creature than itself, and all that is in the world is measured based on that. When looking for the Dragon-sickness in others, do not just look for covetousness, but for overweening pride, prickly dignity and furious self-righteousness."
21	"Cûtoel, a Fire-drake of the line of Ádfyr, attacked a fortress of the Men of the West in ages past. He did not find a wealth of gold, though there was some, but this fortress was an armoury of a king. Thus the worm took to his treasure hoard finely wrought weapons of powerful might, and he lay down upon them to sleep."
22	"Of the Dragons that spit poison much has been said, but it is not just they that are poisonous. The very body and blood, every bit of a Dragon, is a danger to mortals. Touch not a worm with your bare hand, but only with a mailed fist, or better yet, a stout pole tipped with a bright head."
23	"Few know this, but I have heard tales of it. Dragons fight with other Dragons and even with other servants of the Enemy. Indeed, they are not so much slaves of the Shadow, but creations thereof. With this knowledge, one can turn beast upon beast and foe upon foe, but who is cunning enough to trick the mind of a Dragon? Who is foolish enough to try?"
24	"I have heard that in the uttermost East there is a breed of Dragon known as Were-worms. It is said that they can send their heart forth from their bodies in the guise of an old wrinkled man wrapped in robes of crimson. They serve as viziers to the high and mighty, but use both lies and sorceries to gain even more power and treasure for themselves."

## DRAGONS OF THE THIRD AGE

"Never laugh at live Dragons..."

### THE FOREST DRAGON

This nameless Dragon crawled out of the North three hundred years ago, and dwells in a cave in the heart of Northern Mirkwood. Some say her hoard was stolen from the Dwarves, others claim she plundered a Northman town that is now lost under the leaves. The Dragon is a long-worm, of the line of Scatha.

More information about the Forest Dragon can be found in the *Rhovanion Region Guide* (pages 79-80) and the *Mirkwood Campaign* (pages 102-104).

### Speaking with the Forest Dragon

The few who have survived an encounter with the Long-worm report that she did not speak to them, not that they would have had time to converse with her as the skulking beast struck swiftly from her hiding place. Perhaps she has forgotten the tongues of Men, Elves and Dwarves in her long sleep or never bothered to learn them. In any case, she is silent when stalking her prey.

### Hunting the Forest Dragon

Any who would seek the Forest Dragon must be wary or the hunter will become the hunted. Once she realises that she is being followed, she will seek to separate the Company and ambush them one by one. She might climb a tree, hiding in the dark boughs of Mirkwood, or sink her

## THE FOREST DRAGON

*Huge Dragon (Full-grown Long-worm)*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
24 (+7)	22 (+6)	20 (+5)	14 (+2)	16 (+3)	16 (+3)

**Armour Class** 19 (Natural Armour)

**Hit Points** 207 (18d12+90)

**Speed** 30 ft, climb 30 ft

**Damage Resistances** non-magical bludgeoning and slashing (see below)

**Saving Throws** Strength +11, Dexterity +10, Constitution +9

**Skills** Athletics +11, Stealth +10, Survival +7  
Senses passive Perception 13

**Languages** Unknown (no one in this Age of the world has heard her speak)

**Challenge** 12 (8,400 XP)

**Mirkwood Dweller (Recharge 5-6).** As a bonus action, if the Forest Dragon is within Mirkwood she can gain half-cover from a scenery feature, even if it would not normally provide it.

**Thing of Terror (1/day).** As a bonus action, The Forest Dragon can rear up and display her full strength. Each creature within 60 ft must make a **DC 19 Wisdom** saving throw or be Frightened until the end of their next turn.

**Tough Hide.** The Forest Dragon is resistant to non-magical bludgeoning and slashing damage.

**Weak Spot.** If the Forest Dragon uses her **Crushing Tail-grip** any heroes that are within range may use their reaction to make a single attack. For this attack only, she loses her damage resistances and she is vulnerable to all piercing, slashing and bludgeoning damage.

### Actions

**Multiattack.** The Forest Dragon makes one Bite and two Rend attacks.

**Bite.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +11 to hit, reach 10 ft, one target. *Hit:* 20 (3d8+7) piercing damage.

**Rend.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +11 to hit, reach 10 ft, one target. *Hit:* 16 (2d8+7) slashing damage.

**Crushing Tail-grip.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +11 to hit, reach 5 ft, one target. *Hit:* 13 (1d12+7) bludgeoning damage. The target becomes Grappled (escape **DC 21**). The Dragon can spend its action to cause 13 (1d12+7) bludgeoning damage to the Grappled foe.

### Legendary Actions

The Forest Dragon has 1 Legendary action, given below. At the start of her turn she regains her spent Legendary action.

**Deadly Tail-grip.** The Forest Dragon causes 13 (1d12+7) bludgeoning damage to a Grappled foe.

body into a woodland stream to suddenly erupt from the mud and attack, or she might use the deep shadows of the forest to surprise her foes.

She is a clever huntress and won't attack a group of martially-skilled heroes head on. If pressed, she might grab one unfortunate companion in her deadly tail-grip and then use her superior knowledge of the land around to retreat from the rest of the company. Then she will have plenty of time to tenderise her meal before hunting again.

**Lair Actions:** Disorientating Mists, Echoes of Laughter (Waterfall)

**Regional Effects:** Treacherous

## KIBILUZN

When the Dragons descended upon the Dwarf kingdom in the Grey Mountains, many fell to Dwarven axes and cunning. Of those that died, one nameless Long-worm left something behind, hidden in the deep beneath a fallen

Dwarf-hold: a single egg. None can say why this Worm would choose to leave behind its progeny, only that it lay forgotten for centuries.

Centuries passed in silence and neither the Goblins of Mount Gundabad nor the Dwarves of the Grey Mountains knew what lay slumbering beneath their halls. It was on the same night that Esgaroth burned that this forgotten evil entered the world. Slithering from his broken shell, a silver scaled Dragon was born into darkness.

In the depths of the world he not only survived but flourished. He was a keen hunter, silent and deadly. He stalked the wretched creatures that lived in these abandoned depths, but as he grew in size, so too did his hunger grow.

He slithered south and into the Grey Mountain Narrows, where he began to stalk the scattered camps of Dwarf refugees who lived about the foothills there. The Dragon

saw that his prey carried fine weapons and well-crafted armour, but they also carried something far more precious: jewels and gemstones.

Greed and malice consumed his heart. Taking these riches back into his hold, he became driven by gold-lust, hunting for more Dwarves, more miners, more treasure seekers. Legends and whispers grew amongst the Dwarves of the Grey Mountains. "Kibiluzn" they called him: the Silver Shadow.

Kibiluzn searched out fresh prey in newly dug passages. He journeyed west beneath the stone peaks until he discovered the Goblin tribes that cowered near to Mount Gundabad. They were diminished and broken, still recovering from wounds suffered during the Battle of Five Armies. They had no gold, no jewels, no treasure.



As Kibiluzn lay in shadow, watching the Goblins, there came to his mind, as if by a whisper, a new idea. Kibiluzn descended upon the Goblins, but rather than consume them he instead compelled them. The Goblins screamed and cowered, grovelling before the awful worm.

It would do well for a Dragon to have servants to command, so Kibiluzn bid the Goblins serve him. Promising them

riches beyond imagination and Dwarven blood upon their blades, Kibiluzn has drawn scores of Goblins to his service.

Still they come, countless Goblins and other wretched creatures, to the service of Kibiluzn. All live in the depths of the earth beside the Dragon, basking in the glory of his wealth, slaves to his terrible beauty.

Soon, the Dragon will have an army. Then the Dwarves of the Grey Mountains will know terror and horror anew. Kibiluzn is young, yes; but ambitious. A longing for gold and carnage grows with each passing season in his heart, yet a deeper desire grows in its breast. There is a calling in its heart from the East. As the Silver Shadow grows in strength, so too does a longer darkness reach out to claim all of Wilderland.

### An Audience with Kibiluzn

Heroes wanting to meet with Kibiluzn might play on his desires to command others. Presenting themselves as mercenaries willing to work for a Dragon is a dangerous approach, but one that has at least a chance of working. Of course, no great worm will willingly part with their treasure so the negotiations are likely to be fraught. This means the heroes might accumulate a large amount of Shadow: first for lying to the Dragon and second for the demanding playacting.

**Motivation:** There is no one more cleverer than me, and my army will bring ruin to the North!

**Expectations:** +2 if the Company bows and scrapes or acts suitably afear'd of Kibiluzn's presence; -1 if they mock his motley force of wretches; -2 if they have slain a number of the Dragon's Goblins.

**Traits:** Lordly, Proud, Secretive

### Attacking the Silver Shadow

Kibiluzn's current lair is somewhere in the northern reaches of the Misty Mountains, near to Gundabad. He might be near The Lost Watchtower (*Rhovanion Region Guide*, page 19) or the Long Delve (page 27 of the same volume) or one of the many vastnesses left empty from the War of the Dwarves and Orcs (see page 106).

## KIBILUZN

*Large Dragon (Young Long-worm)*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
20 (+5)	22 (+6)	21 (+5)	12 (+1)	13 (+1)	14 (+2)

**Armour Class** 17 (natural armour)**Hit Points** 126 (12d10+60)**Speed** 30 ft**Saving Throws** Strength +8, Dexterity +9, Constitution +8**Skills** Athletics +8, Stealth +9, Survival +4**Senses** darkvision 60 ft, passive Perception 11**Languages** Orcish, Westron**Challenge** 6 (2,300 XP)

**Fell Speed.** Kibiluzn may take a bonus action to Disengage and move up to his speed towards an enemy he can see.

**Hatred (Dwarves, Recharge 5-6).** Kibiluzn can use his bonus action to gain Advantage on attacks against his chosen prey this round.

**Weak Spot.** If Kibiluzn uses a special Feature that uses an action (**Noxious Vapours**), any heroes that are within range may use their reaction to make a single attack. For this attack only, he is vulnerable to Piercing, Slashing and Bludgeoning damage.

## Actions

**Bite.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +9 to hit, reach 10 ft, one target. *Hit:* 15 (2d8+6) piercing damage or 17 (2d8+8) damage at night or underground.

**Render.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +8 to hit, reach 10 ft, one target. *Hit:* 12 (2d6+5) slashing damage or 14 (2d6+7) damage at night or underground.

**Noxious Vapours (Recharge 4-6).** As an action, Kibiluzn exhales a thick cloud of foul fumes in a 15 ft cone. Each creature within the cone must make a **DC 16 Constitution** saving throw, becoming Blinded and Poisoned for 3 (1d4+1) rounds on a failure or Poisoned for 3 (1d4+1) rounds on a success.

## Reactions

**Commanding Voice.** Kibiluzn demands utter loyalty from the Orcs and Goblins in his employ. As a reaction, Kibiluzn can utter a command or shout a warning whenever an allied creature that he can see within 30 ft, is about to make an attack roll or a saving throw. The target can add a d6 Command Die to its next roll, provided it can hear and understand the message. A creature can benefit from only one Command Die at a time, and creatures that possess Commanding Voice cannot benefit from this effect.

Kibiluzn will spend his forces (mostly Misty Mountain Goblins and Goblin Archers) unstintingly so that he does not have to risk his precious hide. If forced into direct combat, he will prefer the deep and dark places underneath the mountains where he can benefit the most from his natural advantages. He will undoubtedly be accompanied by some of his strongest bodyguards (Orc Guards and, perhaps, Black Uruks sent from the Land of Shadow).

**Lair Actions:** Terrible Stench, Unstable Ground**Regional Effects:** None

## LYTEGAN

Like so many tales of Dragons in the Third Age, Lytegan's begins on the Withered Heath. She descends from a line akin to that of Smaug the Golden, but she was born far smaller than most of her brethren.

Though she does have wings and foreclaws, her rear limbs were partially stunted even as she was hatched.

Lytegan swiftly realised that her days were numbered if she remained on the Withered Heath and while many of her siblings were fighting with one another for supremacy, she slithered her way south into the Grey Mountains.

At the time, the Dwarves still firmly held the Grey Mountains, and Lytegan was cautious at avoiding their attention. She grew adept at slipping into and out of Dwarf-holds unnoticed, careful to leave no trace of her presence. Eventually, for all her restraint, her thefts grew too bold and the number of missing guards too many. When the Dwarves began to hunt after her, she flew west on a moonless night, with such wealth as she couldn't bear to part with.

In 2472 of the Third Age she entered the northern Misty Mountains and slowly began working her way south along the range. Though Lytegan could not have known it, her timing was excellent, as the mountains were not yet teeming with the Orcs and Goblins that would populate them less than a decade later at the Dark Lord's behest.

She slept in mostly abandoned caverns, only occasionally leaving the deep tunnels to hunt in the rich vales east of the mountains when the taste of fish and Goblin grew stale.

Lytegan's southward trail eventually led to the gates of Moria. She plundered what she could from the Black Pit, making certain to stay mostly in the upper halls so as not to draw attention to herself. Soon, the numbers of Orcs grew too great for stealth and she withdrew from the mines, though she did not go far. Lytegan chose to make her lair in the heights of Cloudyhead, one of the three great mountains over Moria.

Called Fanuidhol the Grey by the Elves and Bundushathûr by the Dwarves, Cloudyhead suited Lytegan because of the clouds that perpetually concealed its peak. Now she sleeps high in the mountain, directly northwards of the Dimrill Dale, far above Moria, occasionally waking to pick off likely travellers on the Redhorn Pass or bands of Orcs carrying worthwhile trinkets.

Lytegan is as long as three large draft horses, standing end to end. Her scales are a fine silvery-grey, shot through with traces of gold along the edges. Her snout is triangular, filled with several rows of serrated teeth.

She moves with an almost-feline grace, frequently folding her arms and wings against her body to slither like a snake if she is underground. She possesses the old-fire and her breath still promises a fiery death, but she is wary of using it if it will draw attention to her.

During her wakeful periods she likes to fly high within the clouds of Fanuidhol, keeping her presence concealed while still allowing her to inspect the lands about her lair with keen eyes.

Lytegan's hoard is worth 200\*\*. In addition to gold, jewels and many finely-wrought Dwarven items, she has several large chunks of shimmering Mithril ore that she took from Moria.

### Meeting Lytegan

It is hard to have an audience with this cautious Fire-drake. Against those she deems a threat, Lytegan will either withdraw or attempt to lead the heroes into a trap. But

if she is somehow cornered, she will use all the cunning of her kind to escape. Her promises are empty and her secrets are nothing but lies — she spins falsehoods like the spiders of Mirkwood spin webs.

**Motivation:** Survival matters more than anything else... my life is worth more than any treasure.

**Expectations:** +1 if the Company approaches without weapons at the ready; -1 if she learns she herself has been deceived; -2 if the heroes contradict her falsehoods.

**Traits:** Cautious, Cunning, Nimble

### Battling Lytegan

Lytegan likes to use her superior mobility in combat, flying high and swooping down to use her Fire Breath or her Wing Attack and then retreating to a safe distance. Lytegan is not interested in fair fights.

Lytegan is cunning and malicious. She has, on occasion, simply caused an avalanche to bury particularly dangerous heroes, then melted the snow off with her breath to acquire whatever takes her fancy from the corpses of her targets. Unlike most Dragons, she has few compulsions about withdrawing to fight another day.

**Lair Actions:** Freezing Fog, Smoke and Flame

**Regional Effects:** None

### A Dragon of Greater Power

While Lytegan is still a Young Fire-drake, a review of her stats will indicate that she is more powerful than others of her age category. In addition to deadly attacks like Fire Breath and Wing Attack, she also has stout defenses... her Scaly Hide and her Fleet of Wing. For these reasons — and for the fact that she has seven 'slots' worth of features instead of five — she is judged to be Challenge 7 instead of 6.

When making your own Dragon, consider if you need to modify the rating of your Great Worm if it is especially powerful or weaker than others of its kind.

## LYTEGAN

*Large Dragon (Young Fire-drake)*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
23 (+6)	18 (+4)	18 (+4)	14 (+2)	11 (+0)	16 (+3)

**Armour Class** 18 (natural armour)**Hit Points** 114 (12d10+48)**Speed** 20 ft, fly 90 ft. (see below)**Damage Resistance** non-magical bludgeoning and piercing (see below)**Saving Throws** Constitution +7, Wisdom +3, Charisma +6**Skills** Deception +6, Lore +5, Perception +3, Stealth +7**Senses** darkvision 60 ft, passive Perception 13**Languages** Westron**Challenge** 7 (2,900 XP)**Fleet of Wing.** Lytegan's flying speed is 90 ft.**Scaly Hide.** Lytegan is resistant to non-magical bludgeoning and piercing damage.**Weak Spot.** If Lytegan uses a special ability that uses an action (**Fire Breath**), any heroes that are within range may use their reaction to make a single attack. For this attack only, she loses any damage resistances and is vulnerable to Piercing, Slashing and Bludgeoning damage.**Actions****Bite.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +9 to hit, reach 10 ft, one target. *Hit:* 15 (2d8+6) piercing damage.**Rend.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +9 to hit, reach 10 ft, one target. *Hit:* 13 (2d6+6) slashing damage.**Fire Breath (Recharge 5-6).** As an action, Lytegan exhales fire in a 30-ft cone. Each creature in that area must make a **DC 16 Dexterity** saving throw, taking 31 (9d6) fire damage on a failed save, or half as much damage on a successful one.**Legendary Actions**

Lytegan has 2 Legendary actions, choosing from the options below. She regains any spent Legendary actions at the beginning of her turn.

**Piercing Words.** Lytegan can force a hidden creature to make a **DC 18 Wisdom** saving throw. On a failure the creature reveals itself to her. She must be able to infer the presence of the creature in some way (for example, she can hear the creature or it was in sight recently) in order to use this ability.**Wing Attack.** Lytegan can beat her wings. Each creature within 15 ft of her must make a **DC 16 Dexterity** saving throw or take 13 (2d6+6) bludgeoning damage and be knocked Prone. She can then fly up to half her flying speed.

## RAENAR

Far off in the Withered Heath, a great Cold-drake slept. More than three hundred years ago he plagued the Grey Mountains, killing and stealing from the Dwarves who lived there. They called him Raenar, the Plunderer, for he had smashed the gates of many halls since the reign of Náin the Second. In 2589 he killed King Dáin the First, and his second son Frór, but was grievously hurt in the battle. Soon after that, he abandoned the region.

Raenar didn't die of his wounds. He settled in a frozen cave to heal, and slowly fell into a slumber. His sleep would have lasted an age or more, if he hadn't been awoken. His long sleep has diminished him in size and strength, but it hasn't robbed him of his wicked cunning or of his ability to catch the scent of gold and precious things...

Raenar's story is explored in *Wilderland Adventures*, starting on page 134. Depending on the outcome of that adventure (or if you'd like to introduce Raenar in a different way), he might have the chance to recover more of his strength and power. If that's the case, use the following information for any encounters with the Cold-drake.

**A Dangerous Conversation**

Raenar's arrival is heralded by an almost overpowering stench. The Cold-drake is a terrifying sight: a vast silver-grey serpent, wingless, with a huge head set upon a thick neck. He walks on four short and robust legs, sometimes slithering on his slime-covered belly.

From his beak-like muzzle and powerful, saw-toothed jaws emerge wisps of venomous cold vapours. Around his neck is an iron-banded collar, a reminder of Raenar's enslavement during the Elder Days.

If he chooses to meet with the heroes, Raenar humbly presents himself as the greatest of all Cold-drakes, the Dragon-king, the plunderer of a hundred Dwarf-halls, the slayer of Kings, the Great Worm of the Frozen Waste, the Scourge of the North, and so on.

**Motivation:** There is one thing I prize more than murder, gold or precious stones: freedom. I will never forget my subjugation of long ago and I WILL NEVER submit to another's command.



**Expectations:** **+1:** if they amuse the Dragon with riddles; **+2** if the heroes flatter Raenar; **-1** if he suspects the Company are trying to stall or fool him; **-4** if anyone implies that he is anything less than the mightiest Dragon in this age of the world.

**Traits:** Curious, Proud, Vengeful

### A Deadly Cold

Adventurers who are fearless enough to confront the Plunderer of the North will have quite a fight on their hands. Before closing with the heroes, Raenar is likely to use his **Mesmerise** ability on the those he deems

the biggest threat, in order to keep them out of the combat. He'll try to use his **Poison Blast** to reduce the effectiveness of any remaining combatants and then use his primary attacks and his **Horrible Strength** to lay low anyone who dares close with him.

The following entries assume that Raenar has found a new lair, perhaps after ridding it of other troublesome occupants.

**Lair Actions:** Echoes of Laughter, Terrible Stench

**Regional Effects:** Desolation

### RAENAR THE GREAT COLD-DRAKE *Huge Dragon (Venerable Cold-drake)*

STR	DEX	CON	INT	WIS	CHA
24 (+7)	18 (+4)	24 (+7)	15 (+2)	13 (+1)	18 (+4)

**Armour Class** 21 (natural armour)

**Hit Points** 283 (21d12+147)

**Speed** 30 ft

**Saving Throws** Constitution +12, Intelligence +7, Wisdom +6

**Skills** History +7, Intimidation +9, Perception +6

**Senses** darkvision 60 ft, passive Perception 16

**Languages** Westron, Black Speech, Sindarin

**Challenge** 15 (13,000 XP)

**Horrible Strength.** If Raenar makes a successful melee attack, he may use his bonus action to cause 7 additional damage of the same type as the original type.

**Weak Spot.** If Raenar uses a special ability that uses an action (**Mesmerise** or **Poison Blast**), any heroes that are within range may use their reaction to make a single attack. For this attack only, Raenar is vulnerable to Piercing, Slashing and Bludgeoning damage.

#### Actions

**Multiattack.** Raenar makes two attacks biting once and then either rending or using his tail attack.

**Bite.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +12 to hit, reach 10 ft, one target. *Hit:* 20 (3d8+7) piercing damage.

**Rend.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +12 to hit, reach 10 ft, one target. *Hit:* 18 (2d10+7) slashing damage.

**Tail-Lash.** *Melee Weapon Attack:* +12 to hit, reach 10 ft, one target. *Hit:* 13 (1d12+7) bludgeoning damage and the target is knocked Prone.

**Mesmerise.** Raenar may use his action and target one creature, who must make a **DC 18 Wisdom** saving throw or become Charmed by the Dragon. Each time he does anything harmful to the target, it can repeat the saving throw, ending the effect on a success. Otherwise, the effect lasts 24 hours or until Raenar leaves the area, is slain or takes a bonus action to end the effect.

**Poison Blast (Recharge 5-6).** As an action, Raenar exhales poisonous bile in a 50 ft cone. Each creature in that area must make a **DC 18 Dexterity** saving throw, taking 37 (5d4+25) poison damage and becoming Poisoned for 2d4 rounds on failed saving throw. A successful saving throw reduces the damage by half, and the target is Poisoned for only 1d4 rounds.

#### Reactions

**Draconic Resistance (Recharge 5-6).** Dragons are notoriously tough and free-willed. Raenar may activate this ability as a reaction to failing a saving throw. He automatically succeeds at the saving throw instead.

#### Legendary Actions

Raenar has two Legendary actions choosing from the options below. Raenar regains spent Legendary actions at the start of his turn.

**Bite Attack.** Raenar makes a bite attack.

**Rend Attack.** Raenar makes a rend attack.

# the war of - the DWARVES - and ORCS

*Then Nár turned the head and saw branded on the brow in Dwarf-runes so that he could read it the name AZOG. That name was branded in his heart and in the hearts of all the Dwarves afterwards.*

The woes of Durin's folk in the Third Age are many, but perhaps none more tragic than the death of their King, Thrór, and the War of the Dwarves and Orcs that followed. Never in the Third Age has so mighty a Dwarf host gathered, and never have so many fallen in battle as in that war of vengeance.

## THE EVE OF WAR (2790)

Throughout the Third Age, the Dwarves of the line of Durin fell upon hard times. After fleeing the Grey Mountains following the wars with the Cold-drakes, they returned to the Lonely Mountain, to rule over Erebor for a time. When the Dragon Smaug fell upon them they were forced from their domains once more, suffering exile anew.

In the year 2790 of the Third Age, Thrór, their elder King, made a fateful journey to the eastern doorstep of Khazad dúm, his kin's ancient stronghold in the Misty Mountains. There he found the gates of the vast hold open; gazing upon the true birthright of his people the King decided to venture within its halls alone. His only companion, Nár, waited for him in the valley outside.

Thrór delved within Moria for some time, exploring the deep halls and dusty storerooms of his ancestral home, until he was set upon by the Orcs who dwelt there now, led by the cruellest of their kind: Azog. He suffered dire torture and unremitting interrogation, yet Thrór frustrated his captors, refusing to answer their queries or succumb to their devices.

On the third day Nár heard a horn blared from inside the gate, and crept nearer to investigate. Thrór's body was flung through the gate onto the steps. To Nár's horror, his lord was dead. A freshly carved word written in the runes of the Dwarves: "AZOG" was carved on Thrór's brow.

Then Azog came forth from the gate and, pointing to the body with clawed finger, he announced that such was the fate of any Dwarf who dared to come to Moria. Azog declared himself King of Moria. He demanded that Nár carry the brazen threat and the ill tidings back to his scattered folk. Before he left, the dismayed Dwarf was





## Dwarf Player-heroes and the War

Older Dwarf-heroes – 150 years of age or older – will undoubtedly have fought in the War of the Dwarves and Orcs. Some might carry the burdens of the Battle of Azanulbizar still; a kinsman who fell beside them, perhaps, or an injury they themselves sustained. Perhaps their arms and armour are from that dark day. Undoubtedly a hatred of Orcs continues to burn in their breasts.

Younger Dwarves who did not fight in the war will still have been touched by it. Perhaps their father or older brother did not return from the Battle of Azanulbizar, or maybe they now bear an heirloom made significant by its use in the war.

As a player of a Dwarf, you might like to carefully read this chapter and consider what role it plays in your hero's background.

struck with a small pouch of cheap coins: rude weregild for Thrór's body.

Nár fled, weeping at the loss of his King. After a long, wretched journey, he came to Dunland, the land of their exile, and related the tale of Thrór's fate and Azog's threat. As the story came to its terrible end, the fury of the assembled Dwarves boiled over into a seething anger. For seven nights, Thráin son of Thrór sat alone in his chambers. At last he emerged, vengeance burning within his breast.

### THE MUSTERING OF THE HOST (2790-2793)

What Thráin planned was no simple murder. It was no mere bounty to be hunted down. This would be the marshalling of all the might the Dwarves could muster. This required careful planning, a meticulous consideration of strength and a methodical gathering of warriors and weapons.

He gathered his own folk in Dunland and informed them of his intent. In time, news spread to Dwarves that resided nearby, until all of Durin's folk heeded the call to arms. Such was the size of their assembled numbers that it was likened unto the days of old. And yet, more were needed. Thráin next sent messengers to those Dwarves living in the Blue Mountains, and also to the hold in the Iron Hills where their cousins resided still. His messengers even took Thráin's news into the farthest reaches of the East. The message was the same for all who received it: Thrór

was dead at the hands of Azog, who now claimed Moria as his own.

Three years passed before Thráin stood at the head of his host. Durin's folk gathered all their strength in Dunland, but they did not gather alone. The fathers of all the Houses of the Dwarves dispatched great forces of their own to answer Thráin's call. The Dwarves had assembled and were ready to set upon their hated foe to enact their revenge.

### Planning and Scheming

In Dunland, Thráin gathered the fathers of the Dwarf Houses to plan the war of vengeance. Maps were unrolled; mountain peaks and vales were indicated where pertinent tactical suggestions were considered. It was clear the vastness of the Misty Mountains would impede the mission. Some suggested attacking Moria alone, but Thráin bristled at the idea. It was not enough to kill Azog: all the Orcs must be slain.

After much deliberation, a plan was formulated that detailed an onslaught upon all of the Orc holdings in the Misty Mountains. Initial attacks were organised targeting the largest of Orc lairs; it was to be a mailed fist closing around Moria itself. The strategy was relayed to all the Dwarf-thanes and, in due course, the host made preparations to depart. On that day, Thráin led his own household at the vanguard of tens of thousands of Dwarves. Iron-shod boots pounded the dusty plains as they

departed north. Carts and wagons laden with supplies, weapons, tools, gear and all manner of equipment were pulled by oxen and pony behind. Siege engines, built to attack the Orc lairs, were dragged along behind. This was a host of Dwarves the likes of which had not been seen in the Third Age.

### THE WAR OF VENGEANCE (2793-2799)

The next seven years saw many battles, some great victories for the Dwarves and many bitter defeats. But the Dwarves were relentless.

#### The Fall of Mount Gundabad

The Dwarves marched northwards, towards the Orcs' nest in Gundabad. It took many months to traverse the lands north of Dunland and west of the Misty Mountains. Crossing the Glanduin, they came upon Eregion and stayed for a time near the Hollin Ridge, where they sent scouts to spy on the Orcs of Moria. In time, they crossed the great East Road and entered the Ettenmoors. Here the land rose up to meet the Mountains of Angmar. It was a land of haunted spirits and foul reputation, but the Dwarves were troubled little. After months of trekking the wilderness of Eriador, they neared Mount Gundabad.

Stealthy scouts selected the shortest possible route to the east; speed was critical to this plan. Over half of the Dwarf army awaited the summer solstice to begin their journey. With Thráin in command, they marched through the narrow pass. With the long summer sun as their shield, they were unimpeded in their march to the eastern slopes. The Dwarves emerged from the valley just as the sun set. They encamped in a fortified, shielded enclosure beyond the eastern gate of Mount Gundabad.

The next day, horns declared their presence as the Dwarves arrayed themselves before the gates of the stronghold. Orc defenders mustered on the high walls of the fortress, growling their threats and howling their challenges. At Thráin's command, the Dwarf warriors surged forward, bringing forth their siege equipment. Ladders rose to meet the walls, catapults swung into action and battering rams were muscled towards the gates. Ominously, clouds covered the bright sun that morning, causing a ripple of unease amongst the Dwarves. They looked on as the great gate swung open. Suddenly, the Orcs poured out, eager for melee.

Throughout the morning, the battle lines swung back and forth across the vales beneath Mount Gundabad. By midday, however, there was a commotion among the Orcs who had remained within. Something had distracted them from inside their own lair. A quarter of the Dwarven forces had been left on the western slopes of the mountains, and had ventured within Mount Gundabad through smaller entrances left unguarded in the face of the frontal assault. Led by Thráin's chief scout, Huthrar, hundreds of Dwarven warriors surprised the Orcs, forcing them back towards the eastern gate.

The Orc chieftains were hard pressed to hold back the invaders. Fleeing their own halls, Orcs spilled out into the vales, where they were met by Thráin's eager warriors, themselves augmented by the remainder of the host entering the fray from the mountain pass. Thousands of Orcs fell, the Dwarves slaughtering them in every cave and tunnel they could find.

It took more than a month to rid the lair of all its vile creatures, but in the end, Mount Gundabad was cleansed of Orcs. Thráin's vengeance was only just beginning.



#### Catastrophe amidst the Middle Years

In the months that followed, the Dwarven host rooted out many of the Orc lairs south of Mount Gundabad. Ancient records brought from Erebor proved invaluable in their efforts. Thráin spent many long nights surveying the ancient lore of the mountainous region by lantern light.



Time-worn maps revealed old entrances into the holds and helped the Dwarves outmanoeuvre and outflank the Orc defenders within the mountains. The superior arms and armour of the Dwarves, and Thráin's cunning, won many a battle. Bastion after bastion, the Orcs were defeated. But in the tunnels beneath the High Pass, the Dwarves grew overconfident.

Soon after the fall of Mount Gundabad, Orcs throughout the Misty Mountains came to realise the full extent of the Dwarven aggression. What they had mistaken for the wanderings of an exiled enemy, was in fact war come to the mountains. It was fortunate the foul creatures of the entire range were never united under a single black banner, for had Azog possessed the might of all the Orcs he might have ended Thráin's war before it truly had a chance to begin. In time, however, the foul denizens of the mountains came to arms and each lair was more prepared for invasion than the last.

Resistance became stronger, the Orcs more devious. The advantage of surprise abated, and Dwarven casualties mounted. Yet, it was only in the caves beneath the High Pass that the Orcs sprung their deadliest scheme...

A contingent of Dwarves, led by Thráin, had traversed many of the underground chambers and tunnels beneath the mountains when they emerged in a cavernous opening that appeared to have been the Orcs' pit. It was deserted, which was nothing unusual, as the Orcs were always a cowardly lot. Glad of the reprieve, a temporary encampment was established. And then, an explosive din heralded the fall of the ceiling: in a brief, horrible moment, the host of Thráin was buried beneath falling masonry. Countless died, crushed or suffocated under the weight of the stone. Once the dust had settled, the cavern was filled with the groans of the injured and the laments of the dying. For long days, the survivors lay trapped, awaiting death. Soon their water was gone, and efforts to find an exit from the chamber were abandoned. Hope was lost.

Fortunately for the survivors, scouts were sent out to search for them as soon as the King went missing. Thanks to the extensive records in their possession, the scouts were able to locate the area where the King would most likely be trapped. When they reached the blocked tunnels,

the Dwarves made contact with their brethren by tapping carefully on the stone. They set to delving through the rocks, mattocks tirelessly chipping away. Progress was slow, and made slower still by prowling Orcs. Many died protecting the tunnelling Dwarves, as four waves of Orcs attempted to stop them.

Eventually the attacks ceased and the Dwarves broke through. Many grieved the loss of life that day. The devious and underhanded guile of the Orcs would never again be misjudged. Indeed, the Dwarves would turn those same tactics against the Orcs as the war continued southwards.

### The Blockades of the Late War

During the months that followed, Thráin assessed the losses and weighed them against his triumphs. The balance was favourable, though barely so. He gathered often with his thanes and such able and wise counsel as was available. Together, they formed a cunning plan to block major paths leading to Moria as they continued to clear the smaller Orc holdings along the way. If successful, Azog would be unable to amass a large enough counter attack to hold the Dwarves back.

Though he would have preferred to relentlessly advance, Thráin heeded his advisors and sent miners to collapse the main tunnels leading to the northern reaches of Moria, while he himself attacked more remote Orc-lairs to detract attention from their main objective. The plan took time to develop, and the fighting in the tunnels north of Moria was as bloody as any in the war. In time, three entrances to Khazad-dûm were brought down, but at the cost of many Dwarven scouts. Huthrar himself perished before the last tunnel collapsed.

With the blockade in place, Azog could not summon reinforcements, and Thráin's armies quickly swept through the Orcs' nests north of Moria. By year's end, the conquest was complete.

But many smaller, unmapped tunnels remained intact, and it was through these that hundreds of Orcs fled back to the Black Pit, arriving in Moria with tales of vengeful Dwarves. Azog gathered these survivors, adding them to his own host. The Orc-chief believed the incursion could be stopped when it arrived at his doorstep, and so Azog prepared.

## Blighted Dreams

*"The men of Carn Dûm came on us at night, and we were worsted. Ah! the spear in my heart!" He clutched at his breast. 'No! No!' he said, opening his eyes. 'What am I saying? I have been dreaming.'"*

There are places in Middle-earth where deeds so dark and sorrowful were committed that a darkness has descended upon them. While the passing of years normally washes away all grief, here that shadow has never been lifted. It blights the land and the air, hanging like a dark cloud capable of confusing the minds of any who dare wander there.

These are the sites that saw the bloodiest battles, or the blackest treacheries. Blighted places like the valley of Azanulbizar, the Dead Marshes, the darkest recesses of Moria or the Barrow-downs.

### Haunted Places

*"There are dead things, dead faces in the water," he said with horror. "Dead faces!"*

Following the rules starting on page 181 of the *Adventures in Middle-earth Player's Guide*, heroes may be required to make Corruption checks when entering, traversing or tarrying in a blighted area. But there might be something more in store for those who wander in such accursed lands – if an area has been corrupted beyond healing, its sorrowful past may haunt the Company.

- If you fail a Corruption check with a natural 1, the hero is directly affected by the tragic history of the place, slipping into a dream-like state while awake, or having lucid dreams about the past when asleep. Roll 1d6 and consult the following chart.

**1: Haunted.** The hero gains 1 point of Shadow as normal and for the following day and night suffers a number of additional nightmarish apparitions, equal to 6 minus his current Wisdom modifier (to a minimum of 1). The Loremaster describes the visions, taking into consideration that they are direct manifestations of the blight plaguing the area. Each additional vision causes the haunted hero to automatically gain another point of Shadow.

*For example, a hero fails her Corruption check with a natural 1 while in a dark corner of the Old Forest and then receives this result. She is now haunted, and in the following 24 hours she will see things nobody else will see, like rotting trees attempting to strangle her, or stumble upon open graves containing the corpses of travellers who lost their path in the forest.*

**2-5: Minor Insight.** The hero gains Shadow as normal and experiences visions granting a minor insight into the source of corruption of the area, generally going back to the time when the place endured its most tragic occurrences. Visions and dreams are experienced in first person, and the player-hero is unable to do anything but witness the outcome of events inevitably leading to a tragic ending (but always providing some useful information).

*A hero experiences a minor insight while in the Barrow-downs. He appears lost in thought and mumbles to himself in an arcane language while marching along. When the hero eventually snaps out of his reverie, he tells of how he was looking out of the window of his home a moment before, looking out over his family's lands while the host of Angmar was drawing close, burning and pillaging... the ruins of a burned farmstead is buried somewhere in the vicinity.*

*6: Major Insight. The hero does not gain Shadow, and experiences visions granting a major insight. When this happens, the hero sees things that took place in the area at any time in its past (Loremaster's choice). Visions and dreams are again experienced in first person, but in this case the player-hero may alter the vision, taking action while in his dream-self. In game terms, the player can frame the hero's actions so that they pose a question to which the Loremaster must provide a reasonable answer. The question must naturally concern the Blighted place or the surrounding area. Regardless of the events occurring in the vision, the player may never avoid the inevitable dramatic outcome of the experience.*

*The same hero experiencing a major insight would get to narrate how he reacted upon seeing the advancing army; maybe he ran downstairs, looking for his family sword. If the Loremaster accepts the suggestion, it might reveal some treasure hidden nearby.*

## THE BATTLE OF AZANULBIZAR (2799)

After six years of war, in 2799, Thráin was ready at last to come to Khazad-dûm. From the very start of the campaign, Dwarf scouts had watched the Orcs and studied the lay of the land surrounding the East gate. In the winter weeks leading up to the final battle, Thráin conferred with the fathers of the Dwarf Houses. They all agreed that battle would be joined in the Dimrill Dale, next to the sacred waters of the Mirrormere: Azanulbizar.

Yet, Azog had not sat idle. His host was still vast and, as the Dwarves arrived at Azanulbizar, his horde met them there, arrayed for the last great battle of the war.

The Orcs stood ready on the higher ground afforded by the slopes of the surrounding mountain peaks, Redhorn, Silvertine and Cloudyhead. The creatures were emboldened during that cold and dark winter day for they were many and the sun was hidden.

Below them, the Dwarves stood outnumbered atop a hill to the east of the Dimrill Stairs. With a great shout, Thráin sounded the charge, and the battle commenced.

The Battle of Azanulbizar has been described in great detail in many songs and tales. Suffice it to say here that the Dwarves conquered their foe, but at great cost. Azog was slain by the red axe of Dáin, but so too was fully half the Dwarven host lost that day.

## AFTERMATH

In the aftermath of the battle, Azog's head was mounted upon a great spike, his host destroyed or fled, but there was to be no feast nor song, only silent grief. It was not possible to bury so many fallen Dwarves, so the bodies were stripped of arms and armour so they could not be looted, and then the fallen warriors were laid on a massive pyre. The surrounding forest was hewn to provide fuel for the fire, the pall of smoke rising from the flames so great the reek could be smelled in Lothlórien. Though Thráin sought to reclaim Moria, Dáin persuaded him of his folly. Durin's Bane remained within the Black Pit; this was no home for the Dwarves. Instead, the Dwarves dispersed once again to their distant homes and exiled havens.

For many, it was enough that the Orcs had been defeated, leaving the Misty Mountains free of their taint for over a century. The cost, though, had been terribly high, and it is a rare veteran who speaks of the horrors of the long, cruel war. But they remember...



## TREASURES OF THE WAR OF VENGEANCE

"I have heard that there are still forgotten treasures of old to be found in the deserted caverns of the mines of Moria, since the dwarf and goblin wars."

The Dwarf-host that marched to war was equipped with arms and armour of exquisite craftsmanship, and who knows what other treasures. Although the survivors of the Battle of Azanulbizar stripped the dead of their weapons and armour, who knows what was lost that day? A Loremaster seeking to use the history of the War of the Dwarves and Orcs in his campaign might add some of the following treasures to his Magical Treasure Index.

### WONDROUS ARTEFACTS

Of all the heirlooms of the house of Durin, perhaps the most powerful one was wielded in secret by Thráin...

#### Durin's Ring

The first of the Seven Rings of Power given to the Dwarf lords, Durin's Ring was said to have been given to Durin III not by Sauron but by the Elves themselves. The ring was said to breed gold from gold, but it also inflamed the bearer's heart to greed. Durin's Ring was lost to the Necromancer, but what then became of it?

(Greater Blessing of Investigation, Curse of Weakness)

### LEGENDARY WEAPONS AND ARMOUR

During the War, few Dwarves had time to attend to their smith-craft, but ancient and treasured devices of old were yet again employed to devastating effect.

#### The Armour of Náin

**Type:** Ring-mail

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven

**Banes:** n/a

**Qualities:** 1. Cunning Make 2. Rune-scored Armour

**Notes:** The force of the blow that Azog struck Náin was strong enough to break his neck, but it could not pierce his armour. Small comfort to the Dwarf, no doubt, but testimony to the craftsmanship of the smiths of the Iron Hills who made it.

#### The Red Axe of Dáin

**Type:** Great Axe

**Craftsmanship:** Dwarven

**Banes:** n/a

**Qualities:** 1. Fell 2. Grievous 3. Gleam of Terror

**Notes:** Dáin slew Azog with a blow from his red axe, cutting his head off. But surely Dáin kept his axe when he returned to the Iron Hills; so why does this weapon bear his name, and a blade stained crimson with the blood of Orcs?



### DWARVEN GRUDGES

...in [their] hearts still burns the ancient fire of Aulë the Smith, and the embers smoulder of their long grudge against the Elves...

Dwarves are a staunch folk, intended by their Maker to oppose firmly any domination. It is said that even the seven Rings of Power could not enslave the will of their



bearers. But Dwarves are not free from the threat of the Shadow; in many ways they are affected by its corruption more subtly and more profoundly.

During a Fellowship phase, a Dwarven hero may opt to develop a grudge, representing the stirring of a personal animosity, emanating from ancient grievances and slights suffered by the Dwarf-folk in their long history. To do so, the player cannot choose any undertaking during the phase, and annotates the new sentiment on his character sheet, by writing *Grudge*, followed by the name of the folk the feeling is directed to in parentheses. For example: *Grudge (Bardings)*.

The chosen folk must belong to the Free Peoples, and possibly be one that the character (or the Dwarven folk at large) has had contact with previously (mainly Bardings, Beornings, Wood-Elves and Woodmen, but possibly the Riders of Rohan or Bree-folk). Then, the player removes all temporary Shadow points accumulated so far, gaining 1 permanent Shadow point. (Any previously accumulated permanent Shadow points are retained too.) A Dwarf hero may only develop a single grudge.

The positive aspect of nurturing resentment is that the Dwarf now may focus his frustrations and sense of discomfort, easily finding relief.

- From this moment on, whenever the Dwarven hero chooses the Heal Corruption undertaking, you do not need to make a check, and instead reduce your

Shadow rating by 4 points, as if you had rolled a 25 or better.

But of course there is a negative aspect in being bitter, as it worsens the attitude of the Dwarf hero when he deals with members of the folk he begrudges (members of the Company excluded).

- When the Dwarven hero takes part in an Audience comprising individuals who are the object of the grudge, he must pass a Corruption check (a Wisdom saving throw) or suffer a deep sense of discomfort and irritation, gaining the character a Shadow point. The difficulty of the check is DC 10 plus the Dwarf's current Shadow score.

*Frár ends the current Adventuring phase with 9 Shadow points. Deeming the amount to be dangerous (his Wisdom score is 10), he decides to reduce his Shadow score by cultivating a grudge. Frár's company has had a rough time recently due to the deeds of a band of mercenaries from the Dalelands; during the following Fellowship phase, the Dwarf's player determines that Frár gives in to his folk's old dislike for Northmen and annotates that now his character has a grudge towards Bardings.*

*Frár's Shadow score of 9 is replaced by a single permanent Shadow point. From now on, Frár will easily vent off steam by blaming those Northmen for his misfortune and that of his folk, but will find it hard to hide his vexation in their presence.*



# exploring the - RESTORED - kingdoms

*...all the valley had become tilled again and rich, and the desolation was now filled with birds and blossoms in spring and fruit and feasting in autumn.*

While the land around the City and the Mountain are the domain of King Bard, there are still dangers to be encountered there. They can be a more subtle sort – nobles with ambitions that might set them on the wrong path or well-meaning folk that are misguided – or they can be the ordinary challenges of life in Middle-earth. But beyond the borders of the growing kingdom, the Wild is still the Wild and the North is some of the wildest. The Grey Mountains, the Waste and the Withered Heath are simply stiff with Goblins, Hobgoblins, and Orcs, not to mention other monsters that can test the mettle of the most experienced adventuring companies.

And within the walls of Dale there are dangers too. Companions that do not hesitate to hike a hundred miles through the worst weather might delay before venturing into the Brokenstone after nightfall.

## URBAN JOURNEYS

While going from one end of Dale to another might certainly be an adventure, it doesn't really qualify for breaking out the journey rules themselves. But Loremasters that wish to add a bit of colour to a trip across town might want to roll a d12 and consult the basic Journey Event table (see pages 62-63 in the  *Loremaster's Guide* or the first entry in each of the tables below).

Instead of using the result in a literal sense, you can interpret the event into an urban setting. "A Chance Encounter" or "In Need of Help" are straightforward, but perhaps "A Fine Spot for a Camp" means the heroes see a new inn under construction and might want to visit it when their present adventure is concluded.

It's not too likely (though not impossible!) to see a Goblin within Dale but "Agents of the Enemy" might mean running into someone that one of the companions has quarreled with before or witnessing a crime first-hand.

By putting a little bit of a spin on the results, you can help bring a city like Dale to life. And, if you roll the dice and it doesn't seem to suit the situation then perhaps nothing remarkable happened on that trip. Or you can give your players the general category and ask them for suggestions. That way the players themselves can be involved in the growing kingdom.



## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 1 (OR LESS)

### A Chance Encounter

The Company meets a fellow traveller or group of travellers. The Scout must make a **Dexterity (Stealth)** check to avoid them, or any hero may make a **Charisma (Persuasion)** check to interact with them.

If the interaction is successful, the first roll of the next event is made with Advantage. Failure results in Disadvantage.

### Dwarven Crafters

The Company has encountered a group of Dwarves travelling for business reasons. They might be on the hunt for raw materials and a hero that points them on the right way with a successful **Wisdom (Survival)** check will be rewarded with news from the Mountain. Otherwise, the Dwarves are going to or from Erebor and by making an **Intelligence (Traditions)** check at Disadvantage the Company can have their assistance for next handful of days as their path temporarily joins that of the heroes.

### Farmfolk

Most of the lands near to the Mountain have been reclaimed for the twin Kingdoms and rich farmsteads now occupy what was once a bleak and barren landscape. The Company have come across some of the folk who tend the new fields and can easily trade news with them by making an **Intelligence (Traditions)** check at Advantage.

### Hunters

The Company's path has temporarily encroached upon someone's hunting grounds. Close to the Mountain, this might be fallow land set aside by the King's decree or further afield where no lord's command prevents the common folk from catching dinner on the hoof or the wing. In any case, the Scout must succeed at the check to avoid interrupting the hunt. If successful, the Company might linger and then make a **Charisma (Persuasion)** check to talk with the hunters afterwards.

### Local Minor Noble

Bard has bought much labour for Dale by the generous granting of titles. The lands about the Mountain (and many of the richer residences in the city) are now home to newly minted nobility. Many of these men and women are practical sorts who have struggled and sweated for the Kingdom but some are much more concerned with the privileges they've accrued rather than their duties. Any **Charisma (Persuasion)** checks are made with Disadvantage unless the Company has members with high standing in either Dale or Erebor.

### Merchants from Lake-town

Dale and Esgaroth have a long history together and trade comes and goes up and down the River Running at all times of the year. Those merchants who don't trust to the water for their goods are still likely to be found following the footpaths beside the river as they travel to or from the Lonely Mountain. A companion who takes the time to at least examine the wares of the merchants they've met gains Advantage on their **Charisma (Persuasion)** check to get news out of the travellers.

### Those who Heeded Bard's Call

When the King asked for those of strength and courage to restore the North many folk answered. Some are emissaries, come to take the measure of the new kingdom and learn what gains in profit or power their lord would gain from assisting or thwarting Bard. Others are more personally interested in fortune and fame and have the war gear and determination to succeed. The Company has come across other folk who are active in the area for many of the same reasons as their own. If the two groups meet as allies both dedicated to the success of Dale, then the heroes have Advantage on any **Charisma (Persuasion)** checks. If they see each other as rivals, then either a **Charisma (Intimidation)** or **Intelligence (Riddle)** check is in order instead.

## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 2

### Of Herbs and Stewed Rabbit

The Hunter has an opportunity to gather food. They must make a **Wisdom (Survival)** check. You have Advantage if the Company won *Feasts Fit for the Kings of Ancient Times*, or Disadvantage if you face *Meagre Supplies* and *Poor Meals*.

If successful, you either gather food (restore a level of Exhaustion or 1 Hit Die to each hero) or collect herbs (Loremaster's choice of herbs found). If you fail then the Arrival roll gains a -1 penalty.

### The Grey Mountains

There are small herds of red deer in the valleys of the Mountains for a determined Hunter to find. There are also hares, badgers, wolverines, mice, bears and wolves in the lowlands, with sheep and mountain goats on the steeper slopes. You can find clover, chicory, fireweed, sheep sorrel and white mustard in the mountains. Kingcups reveal themselves with the snow-melt and shaded valleys sometimes hide shadow-thorn as well.

### The Long Marshes

Beavers and wild boars live amidst the reeds, joining widgeons and grouse. Woodpeckers tap at willow trees, mindful of Gallows-weed. A patient stalker can collect a brace of frogs with relative ease, though some kinds are poisonous unless cooked carefully. In the water itself are eels, tench, roach and rudd along with otters.

The roots of reedmace are excellent as food as well as a curative and the head of the plant before it flowers is quite delicious. It is also easy to find curled dock and plantains in the marshes. Water-lilies and Hagweed are also common.

### The Nether Marches

There are less deer here than in the Upper Marches but more hares. Careful hunters can find minks along the banks of the small streams here that hold graylings and

brown trout. Partridges, grouse, pigeon and turtle-doves hide from harriers and goshawks. Chickweed, clovers, field pennycress, milkweed, sheep sorrel and white mustard plants can all be found here. Water lilies can sometimes be found in the slower parts of the Redwater and it is rumoured that shadow-thorn can be found in the Netherwood.

### The Northern Dalelands

In addition to the elk and deer herds, there are hares, stoats and other rodents such as lemmings. Wild sheep and goats can also be found. Wood grouse, snowy owls, partridges, ravens and woodpecker occupy the skies. Trout, char, perch, powan, pikes and graylings fill the streams that wash down from the Grey Mountains to feed the River Running and the Long Lake.

A patient Hunter can find wood sorrel, sheep sorrel, fireweed, pennycress and chicory in the Dalelands, along with many fields of corn kept by farmers. Kingcups can sometimes be found and shadow-thorn grows at the eaves of Mirkwood.

### The Upper Marches

There are many herds of roe deer and lesser creatures like hares and hedgehogs to be found. The streams of the area carry trouts, pikeperch, carps and eels. Sparrowhawks, white-tailed eagles, swifts, plovers, and teals join storks from the distant south in the sky.

Depending on the season, wild berries, hazel nuts, clover, nettles, wild onions and sorrel can be found. Kingcups can sometimes be found in the meadows of this region.

### The Waste

There is little hunting to be had in the Waste. You automatically have Disadvantage on the check and any success means you have found just enough small things (hares, mice, scraggly plants) to keep hunger's edge away.

## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 3

### An Obstacle

Something blocks the path ahead. The Guide must make a **Wisdom (Survival)** check and each other companion must make either **Wisdom (Survival)** or **Strength (Athletics)**. If the Company has horses or ponies, one hero must make a **Wisdom (Animal Handling)** check. All checks have Advantage if they are on *Paths both Swift and True*, or Disadvantage if they face *The Wearisome Toil of Many Leagues*.

If all are successful, the Arrival roll gains +1. If half or more are successful, there is no penalty. If more than half failed then each hero gains a level of Exhaustion. If all fail add a -1 penalty to the Arrival roll to the Exhaustion.

### Already Occupied

The way that the Guide has chosen already has other travellers of some kind. If they are ordinary folk, then the Guide might make an **Intelligence (Traditions)** or **Charisma (Intimidation)** check to allow the Company to pass. Otherwise, the Guide is forced to either wait awkwardly until the path forward is clear (causing each member of the Company to gain one level of Exhaustion but no check is required) or find a new way forward, using the base rules above.

### Dead End

The trail or path that the Company has been following comes to a sudden end, disappearing into the grass or a silent stone wall. This catches the Guide by surprise and she must make a **Wisdom (Survival)** check with Disadvantage. If successful, then all other members of the Company gain Advantage on their required checks as she quickly plots another route.

### False Path

The Guide has been fooled by some deception, intentional or not. They might have taken the wrong turn at the last crossroads, or followed a sign moved by bandits to steer traffic into their trap. If the Guide makes the **Wisdom (Survival)** check then he also gains a point of Shadow as he realises that he has wasted hours of the Company's time and must now backtrack.

### Patch of Desolation

While much of the land around the Mountain has been reclaimed, the Company has managed to stumble into a place where death and dreariness still reigns. If the entire Company fails their check, instead of modifying the Arrival roll each member gains 1 point of Shadow.

### Rockslide

A landslide has occurred and the known ways forward are now blocked by rubble and rocks. Even on a success, the Company has lost precious time going around and will not reach their destination when expected. Apply a -1 modifier to the Arrival roll regardless of whether the heroes succeed or fail.

### Swift and Cold Waters

The Company must cross the quick and frigid waters of the North. This might be the River Running or the Redwater or one of their lesser tributaries. In the autumn or spring the checks must be made at Disadvantage.

## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 4

### In Need of Help

The Company meets someone who needs aid. If they choose not to assist each hero must make a **Wisdom** saving throw to avoid a Shadow Point.

If they do help, they make three checks, usually from **Animal Handling, Insight, Medicine, Nature, Persuasion, Survival** or **Traditions**.

If all checks are successful then all heroes gain Inspiration and +1 to the Arrival Roll. If two checks are successful then one hero gains Inspiration and +1 to the Arrival Roll. If one check is successful then +1 to Arrival Roll. If all rolls fail then a -1 modifier is applied to the Arrival Roll.

### House Fire

All it takes is one moment of inattention for a cook-fire to get out of control. Fortunately, the Company manages to stumble across the farmstead just when the house or an outbuilding has caught fire. The heroes must make **Strength (Athletics)** checks to fight the blaze directly or perhaps use **Intelligence (Riddle)** checks to know where to cut firebreaks. Those who fail in their checks fighting against the fire gain a level of Exhaustion from the smoke and heat.

### Merchants' Mishap

Ahead there is a tipped over cart, broken open strongbox or other signs of a robbery. One or more merchants are there as well. Their response to the arrival of the Company depends on the heroes' approach. If the heroes are cautious and call out in advance then they might hear a sad tale of woe but if they rush in with swords drawn then the merchants will mistake them for more bandits. Sometimes, clever thieves might pretend to be victims in order to trick the companions into letting their guard down and the companions are instead rushing into a trap.

### Miner Trouble

There are many ancient Dwarven mine-shafts in the Iron Hills, Grey Mountains and even a few lesser workings near to Erebor itself. A group of miners has become trapped –

perhaps an earth tremor collapsed part of a shaft, rising waters threaten to drown the mine or some dangerous creature has them cornered. They are close enough to the surface that their calls for aid can be heard, though voices can carry for long distances in stone shafts and reaching the miners may be more difficult than it first seems.

Only **Athletics, Investigation, Riddle** or **Survival** checks can aid the trapped Dwarves.

### Overabundant Harvest

There is such a thing as too much of a good thing, as the companions might observe. They've come across a farmer or hunter struggling with something beyond their abilities: a crop that threatens to rot on the vine or in the ground before all of it can be taken in or an animal taken by the hunter that he cannot carry by himself. If the Company takes the time to aid in the harvest then not only do they gain the gratitude of the farmers or hunters but also gain Advantage on their next check for the Hunter due to the fact that they now have extra provisions themselves.

### Stuck Caravan

The weather has been terrible for several days now, and thus it is not unsurprising to find other travellers in distress. The Company comes across a caravan of farmers' wagons heading to Dale or Lake-town, a merchant craft run aground along the River Running or Redwater or some other group stranded. Muscle and tenacity (**Athletics**) will certainly solve the problem or perhaps clever thinking (**Riddle**).

### Victims of Sark

The companions hear desperate cries for help from ahead or stumble across a scene of devastation when suddenly one of the bodies moves and reaches out for assistance. The Company has come across a recent attack by Sark the Bear-skinned. The raiders are too far away to reliably give chase, but there are folk here who desperately need help and healing. Heroes that leave victims to die in order to give fruitless chase should receive 2 or more points of Shadow.

## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 5

### Agents of the Enemy

The Company approaches a hostile force. The Look-out must make a **Wisdom (Perception)** check to spot the enemy early. The Look-out has Advantage if the Company is *Hidden from the Shadow* or Disadvantage if they face *The Keen Eyes of the Enemy*. These modifiers apply to any rolls made outside of combat.

If successful, they may either sneak away or ambush them (in which case the enemy is Surprised). If failed, the enemy sets an ambush and the Player-heroes are Surprised.

### Agents of Lord Hakon (CR 4)

If the Company has interfered in the plans of Lord Hakon (especially during the course of *Erebor Adventures*) they may be pursued by his agents. Use the City Guards on page 48, one guard for each hero, but the corrupt soldiers do not have their **Silver Whistles**. They are led by one of his lieutenants, a guard commander (page 49).

### Devastation of a Dragon (CR 6)

The Company has come across a place where a mighty Dragon slew many people, causing much grief. Now the dead do not rest easily, remembering the pain of Dragon-fire and the malice of the Dragon-spell.

If the Company lingers here, they will be attacked by Fell Wraiths (page 84 of *Rivendell Region Guide*), made stronger by being a **Formidable** troupe (page 70 of the same volume).

### Garrick (CR 4)

The Company comes across Garrick of the Black Arrow (see page 58) and his ruffians (three Thugs for every two heroes). They are likely to demand payment from the heroes — a toll for guarding the road, crossing a bridge or a fee for camping in his lands or whatever Garrick thinks he can get away with. If it comes to blows he and his fellows will flee any determined opposition only to later try and create more trouble for the heroes.

### Marsh-dwellers (CR 3)

A group of Marsh-dwellers (one for each member of the Company) lies in wait in a mere of stagnant water somewhere near the path of the heroes. These monsters are **Gimlet Eyed** (see *Loremaster's Guide*, page 117) and will wait until nightfall to attack.

### Sark and his Raiders (CR 6)

Sark is out raiding near to the Company's path. He is accompanied by one Outlaw (page 75 of the *Loremaster's Guide*) for each companion. If the heroes manage to get the upper hand, the half-orc has no compunctions about leaving his fellows behind and escaping into the wilderness.

### Soldiers of the Serpent (CR 5)

One of Rugash's scouting parties has caught wind of the Company and has decided to investigate further. Heroes that are cautious and stealthy might learn more than they like about the Serpent and his plans against the Mountain. If the heroes are discovered, there are a Snaga Tracker and two Orc Soldiers for each companion to deal with.

## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 6

### The Wonders of Middle-earth

The Company is presented with a spectacular sight. Each hero must make either a **Wisdom** check or an **Intelligence (Investigation)** check. These checks are made with Advantage in *Fair Weather* and Disadvantage under *Foul Weather*.

If successful, the hero recovers one level of Exhaustion or gains one if they fail. If all heroes succeed, gain a +1 to the Arrival Roll or if all fail then the Arrival Roll gains a -1 penalty.

### Mighty Works of Old

This is not the first time that Dwarves have laboured under the Mountain, nor is it the first time that the bell towers of Dale have been raised. The Company has stumbled upon a reminder of the history of these places. If you succeed at your check and are a Dwarf or are from the North (Bardings or Men of Lake-town) then you gain Inspiration in addition to the other benefits.

### Nature's Majesty

The Company has some chance to sight some impressive display of wildlife, perhaps herds of red deer, great elk or the legendary reindeer of the Forod as they migrate through the Withered Heath. Closer to the Mountain, it might be the sight of a great eagle far above that stirs the hearts of the Company.

### Quiet Moments in the Morning

In the early morning hours, when the sun has just risen and the land has yet to fully awaken, there is

time for contemplation. If you spend this time in quiet contemplation, you can make an **Intelligence (Riddle)** check instead of the **Wisdom** check.

### Sunset in the Mountains

The sun disappears quickly in the West when the mountains cloud the horizon, but the last light of the day lingers for a long time. Those who live here are used to this warm golden light, but travellers might benefit from it. Heroes that are very close to their destination might press on. If you do so, make your checks with Disadvantage. If successful still, add a +3 instead of +1 to your Arrival Roll.

### The View from On High

The Company has the chance to see the land from an unusual perspective, perhaps because they're high on a mountain trail or were able to visit one of the terraces of the Lonely Mountain or the highest towers of Dale. If you succeed at your check you gain Inspiration in addition to the other benefits.

### Well-tired at Day's End

The companions are truly weary at the end of the day, but they also know in their hearts that they have accomplished much good today. It might have been great deeds worthy of a song, or it might be smaller victories that have meaning only for themselves.

A hero that succeeds at their check can choose to either remove 1 point of temporary Shadow and gain Inspiration or recover a level of Exhaustion instead.



## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 7

### A Hunt

The Hunter has a particularly excellent chance to catch a good meal. The Hunter must make a **Wisdom (Survival)** check. These checks are made with Advantage with *Feasts Fit for the Kings of Ancient Times*, and Disadvantage if the Company has *Meagre Supplies and Poor Meals*.

If successful by 5 or more, all heroes recover a level of Exhaustion and the Company gains +1 to the Arrival Roll. Other successes recover a level of Exhaustion only. If the check fails then the Company gains a level of Exhaustion. If the Hunter fails by 5 or more add a -1 penalty to the Arrival Roll.

### The Grey Mountains

The Hunter has the chance to catch one of the famed Dwarven mountain-goats. But the creature is high up and unafraid of leaping from ledge to ledge.

You can choose to make a **Strength (Athletics)** check. If successful, you gain Advantage on your **Survival** check. But any failure on the **Athletics** check means an automatic failure, as if you rolled just under what you needed to succeed.

### The Long Marshes

The Hunter has come across the tracks of some large beast of the fens. It's likely to be a beaver or a wild hog. Unfortunately, the Hunter will need to traverse many areas of sucking mud and stinging insects to pursue the prey. You can choose to give yourself a level of Exhaustion in order to gain Advantage on the **Survival** check.

### The Nether Marches

While herds of roe deer are less common here, there are still some. The Hunter has caught sight of one such herd.

However, the Company must be careful – the deer are in strange lands and even more cautious than normal. If you can succeed on a **Dexterity (Stealth)** check, you gain Advantage on your **Survival** check. If you choose to make the **Stealth** check and fail it, the herd is spooked and the **Survival** check is failed, as if you rolled just under what you needed to succeed.

### The Northern Dalelands

The Hunter has chanced across a sheep or goat that is almost certainly a wild beast, though it might have escaped from a farmer years ago. The creature is an easy catch but is scrawny and does not easily satisfy well-worn travellers. You have Advantage on your **Survival** check but any success only allows you to recover Exhaustion, not to get a bonus to your Arrival Roll.

### The Upper Marches

Among the hunters of Dale, the Kine of Araw are legendary and it chances that determined folk sometimes spy one of the small herds moving across the plains of the Marches. Getting close enough to get a good shot without causing them to flee or trample the would-be hunter is a stiff challenge but a single beast can feed a Company for weeks.

Any further rolls involving the Hunter on this journey can be considered to be passed automatically, as if the Hunter rolled exactly what was needed to achieve the DC.

### The Waste

The Waste is an empty land and not even Béma himself could find a catch worthy of the name. Any success here represents a tightening of the belts and making do with what little things that are good to eat can be found.

## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 8

### A Fine Spot for a Camp

The Scout has spotted a location that might make an excellent campsite. Make an **Intelligence (Investigation)** check.

If the check succeeds by 5 or more then the Company recovers a level of Exhaustion and gains +1 to the Arrival Roll. On a basic success the Company recovers a level of Exhaustion. On a failure the Company gains a level of Exhaustion. On a failure of 5 or more the Company is in danger and might face enemies. They also gain Exhaustion and a -1 penalty to the Arrival Roll.

### High Hillock

Whether the Company are in the Long Marshes or the flat-lands of the Marches, they have been lucky enough to come across a hillock that rises above the rest of the low landscape.

If you score any sort of success the night passes uneventfully and each member of the Company gains Inspiration from the break in the monotony. But you fail, then your position of prominence has attracted some sort of attention and there will be trouble of some sort before the night is out.

### Mountain Trail

The companions are hiking somewhere in the heights (the Grey Mountains, Iron Hills or perhaps the northern slopes of Erebor) when the perfect spot for a campsite presents itself. It is a little cul-de-sac with a rock overhang to keep the weather away, big enough for all the members of the Company and their animals but cozy enough to keep warm with a small fire that shouldn't attract too much attention. But, as Thorin's Company discovered when they crossed the Misty Mountains, sometimes campsites that seem perfect prove themselves perfectly dangerous instead.

### Noble's Camp

The Scout has found an excellent place to stop for the night, but unfortunately it belongs to someone else. It's possible that the camp is currently occupied (in which case an **Intelligence (Traditions)** or **Charisma (Persuasion)**

check is needed to allow the Company to join the noble's group) or it might just be stocked and prepared in case the noble and her hunting party come this way. In such cases, it's a minor misdeed to use the campsite without permission. If the companions use up the camp supplies without even attempting to replace them then they should accrue even more Shadow points.

### Ruins of the Lost Past

The bones of old buildings often provide excellent campsites, as their builders were searching for the same things that the Scout is – good, even, flat ground close to a water source, untroubled by storms or dangerous creatures. But they are also melancholy places that make one think of those people who once called this place home and what caused them to abandon it long ago.

If the Scout fails the **Investigation** check each hero must make a Corruption check, a **DC 15 Wisdom** saving throw or gain a point of Shadow as the companions' talk turns to tragic tales of long ago.

### Safety in the Waste

The Scout has found a cleft between two rock outcroppings in the barren landscape of the Waste. Here there is shelter from the wind and the sun and soil underneath is cool and moist. It is not much, but it is the best that can be expected in these lands. You have Advantage on the check, but gain a point of Shadow if you fail. In this case, the shelter is not everything that it seemed to be and the companions spent their time there without rest.

### Shelter from the Storm

The forecast is taking a turn for the worse and the Company can see some place ahead where they can escape the weather. If the Scout succeeds all is well and the heroes can take some pleasure in listening to the rain outside as they stay warm and dry inside. But if the check is failed then the storm has driven something else to take shelter here too and the companions must deal with it, via diplomacy or force of arms.

## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 9

### A Lingering Memory of Times Long Past

The Company discovers a relic of past ages. Each companion must make a **Wisdom** check.

If successful, the hero gains Inspiration. If you succeed by 5 or more, you may remove a level of Exhaustion. If the hero fails, you must make a **DC 15 Wisdom** saving throw or gain 2 points of Shadow. If you fail the initial check by 5 or more, you must make the saving throw and gain a level of Exhaustion.

If at least half the Company succeed at the check, add +1 to the Arrival Roll. Otherwise apply a -1 modifier instead.

### Casualties of Smaug

The Dragon's descent upon the Mountain was sudden and his devastation was vast. The Company has come across some memory of Smaug's initial attack – a burned farmstead, broken watchtower or stone cottage rent by his talons. If the heroes pursue another Dragon then any failure here reminds them of the power possessed by their foe and each companion gains a point of Shadow.

### Elven Expedition

It is rare for the Elves of Mirkwood to travel great distances in the open, but when their king wishes to replenish his stores of Dorwinion wine they will make a long journey. The Company might come across a current expedition but more likely they have found something left behind on the previous trip. But the First-born rarely let anything fall by chance and there might be some greater significance to the find. Perhaps it signifies a secret place nearby where the travelling Elves keep supplies or it is a warning to those that follow that there is danger nearby.

### The Kings of Rhovanion

Over a thousand years ago, a great kingdom of Men flourished between the eaves of Mirkwood and the Celduin

and its princes were strong allies of Gondor, joining them in their wars against the Easterlings and once figuring into the succession of the southern kings. The Company has found some token of that time. While tales of the Men of Stone-land travel north with merchants, only the very learned amid the North will be able to tell the heroes of the significance of their find.

### The Old Kingdom

The companions are travelling near to Erebor when they come across some reminder of the first Kingdom under the Mountain and how the Dwarves departed not to flee the terror of a Dragon but to follow the wishes of their king. Who is to say that Dáin or his heir will not one day decide to remove the throne of Durin's line once again to the Grey Mountains or return it to its rightful home in lost Khazad-dûm?

### Strange Stars

Along the way something has come into the Company's hands from far away. It might be a gift from another traveller met along the way or something accidentally left behind at a well-used campsite. For those who carefully study it, a hero might muse that people, even separated by thousands of miles and a thousand different traditions, are much the same everywhere. Or the less wise may focus only on the differences that estrange the Free Peoples from each other.

### Unlike our Forefathers

One of the companions has recovered some working of the Dwarves from before the Dragon descended upon the Mountain. Even in its current dilapidated condition it is evidence that the craft of long ago exceeds the grasp of the smiths working there today. If any Dwarf heroes are required to make Corruption checks, they make their saving throw with Disadvantage as grief for what was lost that day stirs their hearts.

## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 10

### A Place Touched by the Shadow

The essence of something dark and terrible lingers here. The Scout must make an **Intelligence (Investigation)** check to avoid the area.

If successful, the Company gains a +1 to their Arrival Roll. If the Scout succeeds by 5 or more, each hero gains Inspiration and may remove 1 temporary Shadow point.

If the Scout fails, each hero must make a **DC 15 Wisdom** saving throw against Corruption or gain 1 point of Shadow. If the Scout fails by 5 or more, some dark thing still lurks here, ancient and evil...

### An Ancient Grief

Somewhere in the Waste, the heroes have come across what looks like the remains of a garden. But the tenders of those plants was no ordinary Man or Dwarf, and a sense of sadness suffuses the entire area. Long, long ago the lovers of growing and fruiting things became estranged from the shepherds of the trees and this place is but one reminder of that sad tale of long ago.

### A Cavern in the Mountains

The heroes have stumbled across a cave entrance in the mountains and are investigating it to see if it will serve as a safe campsite when they come across a gruesome discovery: the bones or other remains of travellers! Whether by losing their way in twisting tunnels, succumbing to earlier injuries or perhaps being poisoned by water or another substance in the cave, the previous campers never left. Even if you succeed in your **Investigation** check, each hero must make the Corruption check or gain a Shadow point.

### Dragon's Den

The Company has stumbled across what used to be the lair of a Dragon. However, the monster was defeated long ago and whatever treasure it once had was recovered by its slayers. But the Dragon-spell still lingers and any heroes that stay here will soon find their thoughts brooding over

any 'unfair' distribution of wealth in the Company. Each companion automatically gains a point of Shadow even if you succeed in your **Investigation** check.

### No Way Out

The Company is briefly detained by bad luck: a promising trail comes to a dead end, a sudden storm forces the heroes to take temporary shelter or a confusing mists prevents the Guide from seeing any landmarks at all. But there is something else at work too... what would normally be only momentary frustration builds in the Scout's heart and any failure sees you lash out at the other companions. Choose a hero other than yourself to gain a point of Shadow from your tirade.

### Pale Enchanted Gold

The Company is travelling in marshlands and the Scout has seen the gleam of treasure in the muddy waters around them. Standing on a patch of soggy ground, the coins or other valuables seem to be resting just under the water nearby. But when the hero wades into the water to retrieve them, it is revealed that the water is deeper than it seems and the gold is further away. Or perhaps the mud stirs and the golden gleam of treasure is spied in another part of the pond after the disturbance settles. In any case, greedy adventurers can easily strain themselves (gaining a level of Exhaustion) for only a handful of coins that seem to lose their allure out of the water.

### A Place of Betrayal

At some time – perhaps recently or many years ago – this was the site of treachery and the stones remember it even if Men do not. The companions get the sense that the Company is not in agreement on the way forward and even settled arguments may flare up again. You have Disadvantage on the initial **Investigation** check but even if you fail it by 5 or more Shadow is the only consequence: any evil in this place is only what the Company brings with them.

## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 11

### The Enemy is Abroad

Evil Men, Orcs, Goblins or other servants of the Enemy are moving through the area. If the Company is subject to *The Keen Eyes of the Enemy*, the confrontation is unavoidable, if the Look-out makes a **Wisdom (Perception)** check, the enemy is Surprised on the first round of combat.

If the Company is *Hidden from the Shadow*, the Look-out can use **Perception** or **Stealth** to avoid the enemy. If the check fails, the enemy is still Surprised on the first round of combat.

If neither applies, then each member of the Company must make a **Dexterity (Stealth)** check. If the Company has horses or ponies then one companion must make a **Wisdom (Animal Handling)** check as well. If any of these rolls fails, they have spotted and battle is engaged with no advantage to either side.

### Hobgoblins of the Worst Sort (CR 8)

A small tribe of Hobgoblins (page 98 of the *Loremaster's Guide*) is on the prowl and has caught the delicious scent of the Company. There are three of them for each member of the Company and each is a **Biter** with **Reckless Hatred**. (Both abilities are found on page 118 of the *Loremaster's Guide*.)

### Kibiluzn's Army (CR 8)

While the Dragon himself should be the focus of a campaign, a Company that ventures too close to his lair might find them assaulted by a group of soldiers from his army (Goblin Soldiers equal to three times the Company's

size and two Goblin Archers for each hero). The entire group counts as a **Vengeful Band**.

### Lytegan (CR 7)

The Company will only spy this Dragon if they venture near to the Misty Mountains, perhaps sent on a scouting mission by a Dwarf-lord to investigate Dwarrowhall (see page 64 of the *Rhovanion Region Guide*). She will try to stay aloft to use her speed and fiery breath to her advantage. (See page 103 for more notes on Lytegan's strategies in combat.)

### Mountain-Troll Pass (CR 12)

The Company has accidentally wandered into the domain of a Mountain-troll family. Each member of the troupe (one for each hero) has a **Thick Hide** (page 121 of the *Loremaster's Guide*). They attack as a group with little strategy and will flee when the first of them falls.

### Sark the Bear-skinned (CR 11)

If the companions have driven off Sark before, he might decide to hunt the Company with more of his raiders. He can afford to spend time and their lives to wear down the heroes, striking only when they are at their weakest. There are two Outlaws for each hero plus Sark himself.

### Rugash the Serpent (CR 6)

Rugash the Serpent and his band – one Orc Soldier with **Dying Frenzy** per hero and one Orc Guard with **Thrall (Rugash)** per hero – are nearby. If Rugash has the upper hand, he'll be sure to ambush the Company in terrain that favours him.

## JOURNEY EVENT TABLE ENTRY 12 (OR MORE)

### Many Meetings? Fly you Fools!

The companions have encountered a traveller upon the road, but all may not be as it at first appears. If the Company began the journey under *Dark Signs and Evil Portents*, it is a servant of the Enemy. If they started *From Auspicious Beginnings* then it is one of the great powers for good. Otherwise, the Look-out must make a **Wisdom (Perception)** check.

If the Look-out succeeds by 5 or more, they recognise the traveller for someone of great standing and may immediately remove 1 Shadow point, gain +1 to their Arrival Roll and may seek an Audience with the traveller. On a basic success, the traveller's identity is shielded from them and the meeting should use the rules for *A Chance Encounter*. **Insight** checks may reveal their true identity.

If the check fails, each hero must make a **DC 15 Wisdom** saving throw against Corruption or gain 2 Shadow points. They must then hide from the enemy (using the rules in *The Enemy is Abroad*) but also gain a level of Exhaustion and -1 penalty to their Arrival Roll. If the Look-out fails by 5 or more then the Company is automatically spotted and they must flee. Each hero gains 2 Shadow points, a level of Exhaustion and a -1 to the Arrival Roll.

### Bombur

The biggest and heaviest Dwarf you've ever seen calls out excitedly. He waves to you, asking if you have time to sit and chat, perhaps over a meal – for he is surely hungry and you must be as well?

Bombur's friendliness might have hidden meanings behind it, especially as dark forces threaten both City and Mountain. He will likely take the measure of the Company and, if he finds them honorable folk, point them in the right direction.

### Captain Elstan

A brave knight with shining armour and a magnificent shield sits upon a fine-bred riding horse. He grins, delighting in the hunt and being out in the wild.

This is Sir Elstan, First Captain of Dale. As the tale of years progresses, he is more likely to serve in an advisory role and leave the fighting itself to younger folk. But when his King needs him, he will take on any challenge.

During the course of *Erebor Adventures* the Company might both aid him in his quests or he might vouch for them in the halls of the wise.

### Clovis

A Hobbit with a large nose and full head of dark curls greying at the ends greets the Company. He asks if they've seen any trouble on the Road recently? He plans to return home soon, to the Southfarthing, in the distant land of the halflings.

Clovis is actually the cover identity of Longo the bandit-lord. He puts on the friendly demeanour to scout out his next victims and to learn what infamy Longo has recently gathered (and perhaps throw any pursuers off his track). If the companions bear open weapons and other war-gear he's likely to pass them by as being too much trouble.

If the heroes become involved in the events of *Erebor Adventures* they'll soon learn more than they want to know about Longo.

### Emissary of the Master

The woman you've met on the Road is too well-dressed for travelling and frowns at the mud on the hem of her dress. You might have taken her for a noble-woman, but her speech is of Lake-town and there a family's business prospects are judged higher than the bloodlines of their forebearers. Her eyes are stern as she asks you of the way ahead.

Despite her direct mannerisms (learnt from dealing with too many silver-tongued merchants), this envoy from the new Master of Esgaroth is like her liege – her interest is in the safety and prosperity of the folk of Lake-town and she works with their best interest in her heart. (If needed, use the courtier stats on page 46.)

## Katun

A middle-aged merchant-woman in Easterling garb approaches. She has a friendly smile and offers tea to those who would visit with her.

Katun is a successful merchant who grew up far to the East. These days she can often be found in the Commons (see page 48) or travelling to or from Dale. Her patience and wisdom are held in high regard by many folk, especially those who are newly arrived to the City of Bells. During the course of *Erebor Adventures*, the Company might be glad of her advice if they should chance across her way.

## Lord Hakon

A tall man with long grey hair, wearing the clothing of a Barding noble leads a small group of Men. He smiles as the

heroes approach but seems cautious and waits for you to introduce yourselves.

Lord Hakon might be met within Dale, or travelling anywhere around the Mountain recruiting for his various schemes. If the companions are the sort of folks interested in morally grey work that comes with some gold and promises of more if they help Hakon restore his rightful place then he has plenty to offer them.

If they're instead suspicious of him, then he will attempt to quit their company as soon as possible. Lord Hakon's ambitions are a major thread of *Erebor Adventures* and his reaction to the Company in later years will depend heavily on their involvement therein.



## - folk of stone -

Now that Smaug is dead and the Kingdom under the Mountain restored, many Dwarves have returned to Erebor. Most of those were wandering refugees who have had no permanent home other than the Mountain. But not all of the folk of the Iron Hills accompanied their lord when he removed to Erebor, and some wanderers in the Grey Mountains venture forth to the new kingdom.

### All Manner of Dwarves

The *Adventures in Middle-earth Player's Guide* gives initial rules for Dwarves hailing from Erebor and the Iron Hills. The following information expands — but does not modify — the traits given for Dwarves of the Iron Hills as well as provide a new option in the Grey Mountains.





## - DWARVES OF THE IRON HILLS -

With cries of “Moria!” and “Dáin, Dáin!” the Dwarves of the Iron Hills plunged in... Panic came upon the Goblins.

Beyond the Waste, where the river Redwater runs swiftly south, rise the Iron Hills, the old kingdom of Dáin Ironfoot. Named thusly because their roots were rich in the metals of martial craftsmanship, they are the home of a hardy breed of Dwarves, survivors who left the Grey Mountains almost five hundred years ago under the leadership of Grór. For centuries the Dwarves of the Iron Hills have toiled in deep places under the earth, in dark mines and brightly lit smithies, and the sound of their hammers striking anvils has never ceased to ring in the surrounding dales and valleys.

Today, the Iron Hills have a new ruler. Dáin Ironfoot is now King under the Mountain, and the best part of his folk followed him to Erebor when he took the throne. His young son, Thorin Stonehelm, remained behind to act as a steward to the King. He currently rules over Dáin's old abode, in the company of his most trusted warriors and retainers, and of those who chose not to leave their ancient homes to go west and rebuild the kingdom under the Lonely Mountain.

The remaining Dwarves of the Iron Hills are for the most part very much like their young ruler, a proud and stern folk, and among them are warriors who have seen many wars. Though they are not as rich in treasure as are their kin in Erebor, they take great pride in their smith-craft, especially in the making of weapons and armour.



## DESCRIPTION

The Dwarves of the Iron Hills live the simple but harsh life of miners and smiths. They are often gruff and terse when dealing with outsiders, as choosing to remain on the far eastern edge of the Wild has made them short-spoken, short-tempered and often quick to seek out a physical solution when a threat arises.

More pragmatic than their cousins in Erebor, when they are on the move they wear simple and functional clothes, never carrying anything more than what necessity requires. But when they march to war, the gear they carry betrays their long tradition of a battle-hardened warrior race. The Dwarves of the Iron Hills often sport long, forked beards, plaited and thrust into their belts when they travel, fight or work the forge.

## DWARVEN NAMES

The Dwarves of the Iron Hills are close kin to those of Erebor and the Grey Mountains and have similar names. (See page 39 of the *Adventures in Middle-earth Player's Guide* for more information on Dwarven naming conventions.)

**Male Names:** Anar, Beli, Bláin, Bruni, Dori, Dwalin, Farin, Flói, Frár, Ginar, Grór, Hanar, Hepti, Iari, Lófar, Lóni, Náli, Niping, Óin, Ónar, Regin, Svior, Thrór, Veig, Vidar.

**Female Names:** Ase, Astrid, Bergdis, Bodil, Dagna, Dís, Eir, Eydis, Frea, Fritha, Gard, Grid, Herja, Hón, Idúnn, Ingrid, Kára, Kóna, Már, Mist, Olrún, Onna, Ragni, Róta, Sigrún.

## STANDARD OF LIVING

What lies under the roots of the Iron Hills cannot compare to the wealth in precious stones and gold that rests below Erebor. The death of the Dragon has improved the trade between the Iron Hills and the lands to the west, but the eastern Dwarves remain much poorer than their western cousins. Because of this, their culture ranks as **Martial**.

**Bonus Equipment:** A heavy woollen travelling cloak, travelling gear for the current season, a bedroll, a backpack, boots, 3d6 silver pennies, plus choose any one: another 1d6 silver pennies, artisan's tools of your choice, or a flask of dwarven spirits.

## DWARF TRAITS

Your Player-hero has certain traits deriving from your Dwarven ancestry.

**Ability Score Increases** – Your **Constitution** and **Strength** scores increase by 2.

**Adventuring Age** – 50 to 100. Dwarves generally start their life on the road in their fifties, and do not usually consider retiring before their nineties. Around that time, they feel they can no longer stay away from their family, or want to dedicate themselves solely to the perfection of their crafts. But Dwarves can remain active until they are more than two hundred years old, and may return to adventuring if a great need arises, like the opportunity to avenge an old insult or injury, or to recover a treasure or reclaim a long-lost dwarf-hold. A healthy Dwarf who avoids a violent death can reach two hundred fifty years of age.

**Size** – Dwarves generally stand between 4 to 5 feet tall and can weigh upwards of 160 lbs. Your size is Medium.

**Speed** – Your base walking speed is 25 ft. Your speed is not reduced by wearing heavy armour.

**Night Vision (Dwarf)** – Accustomed to life underground, you have superior vision in dim conditions. You can see in dim light within 60 ft of you as if it were bright light, but you cannot see in the dark.

**Dwarven Resilience** – You have advantage on saving throws against poison, and you have resistance against poison damage.

**Tools for War** – You have proficiency with axes, hand-axes, great axes, hammers, mattocks and warhammers.

**Tool Proficiency** – You gain proficiency with the artisan's tools of your choice: jeweller's tools, mason's tools, miner's tools, smith's tools, or woodcarver's tools. You also gain proficiency in one musical instrument of your choice.

**Stonecunning** – Whenever you make an **Intelligence (History)** check related to the origin of stonework, you

are considered proficient in the **History** skill and add double your Proficiency Bonus to the check, instead of your normal Proficiency Bonus.

**Languages** – You can speak, read, and write Dalish, which is the tongue of the Bardings, who speak an older version of the Common Tongue. You can also speak, read and write the secret language of your people, which has never been shared with any others.

### CULTURAL ATTITUDES

Those Dwarves of the Iron Hills have the same approach to strangers as the Dwarves of Erebor in the *Player's Guide*.

### CULTURAL VIRTUES

Dwarves of the Iron Hills may choose *Sworn Allegiance* (described below), *Broken Spells*, *Durin's Way*, *Old Hatred* and *The Stiff Neck of Dwarves* (see the *Player's Guide*, pages 105-107).

#### Sworn Allegiance

"We are hastening to our kinsmen in the Mountain, since we learn that the kingdom of old is renewed."

You do not give your trust to others easily, but when it happens, the bond that is formed is so strong that you treat your friends as kinsmen. The first time that you

complete a long rest during an Adventuring phase you gain Inspiration as long as your companions are not Paralysed, Petrified, Poisoned, Miserable, Stunned or Unconscious. If at least half of the Company are Dwarves, you gain Inspiration in this manner after each long rest, not just the first one.

### CULTURAL HEIRLOOMS

Dwarves of the Iron Hills may pick the new heirloom described below, as well as the following ones listed on page 158 of the *Player's Guide: Axe of Azanulbizar*, *Helm of Awe*. (The *Ironfoot Hauberk* replaces the *Dwarf-wrought Hauberk*.)

#### Ironfoot Hauberk (Ring-mail)

The ancient weaponsmiths of your folk possessed the secret of forging a hauberk of steel mail, made of a fine and flexible mesh that is especially comfortable and lightweight (for a suit of metal armour).

You do not have Disadvantage on **Stealth** checks when wearing the Ironfoot Hauberk. Furthermore, if you have **Dexterity** of 12 or higher, the armour provides AC 15.





## - DWARVES OF THE GREY MOUNTAINS -

But there were Dragons in the wastes beyond; and after many years they became strong again and multiplied, and they made war on the Dwarves, and plundered their works.

Long ago, when Durin's folk fled from Moria, many went north into the Grey Mountains. There they found great riches and new wealth, and for a time the Dwarves prospered in their mountain holds. But soon Dragons came from the Withered Heath and, with the death of King Dáin I, the Dwarves were forced to abandon their domains.

Today there is no Dwarven kingdom remaining in the Grey Mountains, only cold caverns and ruined halls. Those descendants of Dáin I who didn't go east to the Iron Hills or back to Erebor scratch out a living as wandering craftsmen and traders in Wilderland. With no forge of their own, they take work where they can find it, but always look north to the lost realm of their ancestors. There lie the graves of their forefathers and every Dwarf who takes to the road longs for the day when they can return home and restore glory to the halls of their fathers.

Now that Smaug is dead, the Dwarves of the Grey Mountains look to their kinsmen under the Mountain and the Iron Hills with renewed hope. For they recognise that before them lies a land where the veil of shadow has started to lift, and many believe this to be the turning of the tide. They are no longer satisfied to cower in the cracks of the earth. Now they take to the road with a purpose: they seek to restore their place in the world and glory to their lost kingdom.



## DESCRIPTION

The lean and travel-worn Dwarves of the Grey Mountains have a dour look about them and suspicion ever in their eyes, but when approached prove to be the most gracious of all those belonging to Durin's Folk, a politeness that is probably due to their knowledge of the ways of many lands.

Often bent over with toil, they sometimes seem slightly shorter than their kin – though when they stand tall their Longbeard ancestry reveals itself, especially in their proud noses and piercing eyes.

Typically, the Dwarves of the Grey Mountains carry the tools of their craft with them at almost all times, ever ready for the next opportunity to ply their trade. When they do go to war, they seem to favour the same instruments they use when working, as they wield mattocks and stout axes of blackened iron.

## NAMES OF THE GREY MOUNTAINS

See the listing of Dwarven names on page 130.

## STANDARD OF LIVING

Living a life of constant travel and trade has not allowed for the Dwarves of the Grey Mountains to accumulate great hoards of wealth. As such they are considered to have a **Frugal** standard of living.

**Bonus Equipment:** A travelling cloak, travelling gear for the current season, a bedroll, a belt dagger, 2d6 silver pennies, plus choose any one: a haphazard set of tools, a hunting trap or a memento recovered from one of the lost Dwarf holds.

## DWARF TRAITS

Your Player-hero has certain traits deriving from your Dwarven ancestry.

**Ability Score Increases** – Your **Constitution** score increases by 2 and your **Wisdom** increases by 1.

**Adventuring Age** – 50 to 100. Dwarves generally start their life on the road in their fifties, and do not usually consider retiring before their nineties. Around that time, they feel they can no longer stay away from their family, or want to dedicate themselves solely to the perfection of their crafts.

But Dwarves can remain active until they are more than two hundred years old, and may return to adventuring if a great need arises, like the opportunity to avenge an old insult or injury, or to recover a treasure or reclaim a long-lost dwarf-hold. A healthy Dwarf who avoids a violent death can reach two hundred fifty years of age.



**Size** – Dwarves generally stand between 4 to 5 feet tall and can weigh upwards of 160 lbs. Your size is Medium.

**Speed** – Your base walking speed is 25 ft. Your speed is not reduced by wearing heavy armour.

**Night Vision (Dwarf)** – Accustomed to life underground, you have superior vision in dim conditions. You can see in dim light within 60 ft of you as if it were bright light, but you cannot see in the dark.

**Dwarven Resilience** – You have advantage on saving throws against poison, and you have resistance against poison damage.

**Tools for War** – You have proficiency with axes, hand-axes, great axes, hammers, and mattocks.

**Tool Proficiency** – You gain proficiency with the artisan's tools of your choice: mason's tools, miner's tools, smith's tools, or woodcarver's tools. You also gain proficiency in one musical instrument of your choice.

**Stonecunning** – Whenever you make an Intelligence (History) check related to the origin of stonework, you are considered proficient in the History skill and add double your Proficiency Bonus to the check, instead of your normal Proficiency Bonus.

**Born to the Road** – You have proficiency in the Survival skill. When beginning a journey where you serve as Guide for the Company, you may spend Inspiration instead of making an Embarkation Roll. You may choose one of the following results: *Fine Weather*, *Paths Both Swift and True* or *Hidden from the Shadow*.

**Languages** – You can speak, read, and write Dalish, which is the tongue of the Bardings, who speak an older version of the Common Tongue. You can also speak, read and write the secret language of your people, which has never been shared with any others.

## CULTURAL ATTITUDES

Those Dwarves of the Grey Mountains have the same approach to strangers as the Dwarves of Erebor in the *Player's Guide*.

## CULTURAL VIRTUES

Dwarves of the Grey Mountains may choose Dark for *Dark Business* (described below), *Broken Spells*, *Durin's Way*, *Old Hatred* and *The Stiff Neck of Dwarves* (see the *Player's Guide*, pages 105-107).

### Dark for Dark Business

**'We like the dark,' said the dwarves. 'Dark for dark business! There are many hours before dawn.'**

You often have been forced to find sanctuary in cold and lightless caves, to hide from your enemies. In time, your senses have become keen and you are comfortable in even the deepest darkness. If you are making a **Perception** check while in the dark (at night, underground, or in deep forest), you have Advantage.

## CULTURAL HEIRLOOMS

Dwarves of the Iron Hills may pick the new heirloom described below, as well as the following ones listed on page 158 of *Player's Guide: Dwarf-wrought Hauberk*, *Helm of Awe*. (*The Worm Axe* replaces the *Axe of Azanulbizar*.)

### Worm Axe (Great Axe)

A Worm Axe is a double-headed weapon used by the Dwarves in their wars against the Dragons. Its hooked end can bite into the armoured skin of a Great Worm.

When a creature with a **Weak Spot** exposes it and you use your reaction to strike, you have Advantage on your attack roll.





## - DWARVES OF THE IRON HILLS -

MÓNA, DAUGHTER OF GINAR

Your father fought before the Gates of Moria at Azanulbizar, but he never spoke of what happened that day – and this intrigued you all the more. You grew up to be a stout warrior, a guard of Dáin's halls, but still you yearned to set your axe against the Orcs in battle. Five years ago a raven arrived at the Iron Hills and granted you your wish.

You fought at the Battle of Five Armies in the host of Dáin Ironfoot and slew many Goblins that day, and saw many of your friends die to their curved swords.

Finally, you realised why your father never spoke of his past battles. You now know that war is not something to glory in, but a grim necessity. You have taken on that burden so that others might be spared the horrors of war.



# ADVENTURES IN MIDDLE-EARTH™

<b>class &amp; level</b>	Warrior 1	<b>back-ground</b>	Doomed to Die	<b>player name</b>
<b>culture</b>	Dwarves of the Iron Hills	<b>shadow weakness</b>	Lure of Power	<b>experience points</b>

**character name** Móna

Strength 14 +2	Inspiration
Dexterity 15 +2	+2 Proficiency Bonus
Constitution 17 +3	<b>saving throws</b>
Intelligence 10 +0	<input checked="" type="radio"/> +4 Strength <input type="radio"/> +2 Dexterity <input checked="" type="radio"/> +5 Constitution <input type="radio"/> +0 Intelligence <input type="radio"/> +2 Wisdom <input type="radio"/> +2 Corruption <input type="radio"/> -1 Charisma
Wisdom 14 +2	<b>skills</b>
Charisma 8 -1	<input type="radio"/> +2 Acrobatics (Dex) <input type="radio"/> +2 Animal Handling (Wis) <input checked="" type="radio"/> +4 Athletics (Str) <input type="radio"/> -1 Deception (Cha) <input type="radio"/> +0 History (Int) <input type="radio"/> +2 Insight (Wis) <input checked="" type="radio"/> +1 Intimidation (Cha) <input type="radio"/> +0 Investigation (Int) <input type="radio"/> +0 Lore (Int) <input type="radio"/> +2 Medicine (Wis) <input type="radio"/> +0 Nature (Int) <input checked="" type="radio"/> +4 Perception (Wis) <input type="radio"/> -1 Performance (Cha) <input type="radio"/> -1 Persuasion (Cha) <input type="radio"/> +0 Riddle (Int) <input type="radio"/> +0 Shadow-lore (Int) <input type="radio"/> +2 Sleight of Hand (Dex) <input type="radio"/> +2 Stealth (Dex) <input checked="" type="radio"/> +4 Survival (Wis) <input type="radio"/> +0 Traditions (Int)
Shadow 0 Permanent 0	

<b>Armour Class</b> 15 (17 with Shield)	<b>Initiative</b> +2	<b>Speed</b> 25 feet
<b>current hit points</b> 13		
Hit Point Maximum 13		
<b>temporary hit points</b>	<b>miserable</b>	
<b>hit dice</b> 1d10 Total _____	<b>death saves</b>	
	Successes	Failures
	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>

**CHARACTER TRAITS**

**Distinctive Quality**  
**Hardened.** Part of the reason that you have accepted your fate is that you have seen too much death and misfortune already. It's your turn.

**Specialty**  
**Enemy-lore (Orc-kind).** Not only are you doomed to die, but you are sure by whose hands it will be. You won't make it easy for them.

**Hope**  
I wish to inspire my company by my selfless example.

**Despair**  
My death is for naught, for when I die, the Shadow will win.

**attacks**

Name	Att. Bonus	Damage/Type
Great Axe	+4	1d12+2 slashing
Short Bow*	+4	1d6+2 piercing

\*You can shoot your short bow up to 80 feet, or up to 320 feet with Disadvantage.

**features, traits, and virtues**

**Night Vision** - you can see in dim light 60 ft as bright light, but cannot see in the dark

**Dwarven Resilience** - You have Advantage on saving throws against poison, and you have resistance against poison damage.

**Stonecunning** - Whenever you make an **Intelligence (History)** check related to the origin of stonework, you are considered proficient in the History skill and add double your Proficiency Bonus to the check, instead of your normal Proficiency Bonus.

**Dark Foreboding** - You can get some sense of the Shadow's presence. You might be able to sense if an Orc warband is part of a larger force or if a particular ruin is blighted by the Enemy.

**Great Weapon Fighting** - When you roll a 1 or 2 for damage on your great axe, you can reroll the damage die. You must keep the new result.

**Second Wind** - On your turn you can use your bonus action to regain 1d10+1 hit points. You must take a short or long rest before using this again.

**Cultural Virtue:** None.

14 Passive Perception (wisdom)

**other proficiencies & languages**

**Tools for War** - You have proficiency with axes, hand-axes, great axes, hammers, mattocks and warhammers.  
Proficient with miner's tools and flute

**Languages** - You can speak, read, and write Dalish, which is the tongue of the Bardings, who speak an older version of the Common Tongue. You can also speak, read and write the secret language of your people, which has never been shared with others.

**equipment**

G A heavy woollen travelling cloak,  
travelling gear for the current season,  
a bedroll, a backpack, boots, corslet  
S 14 of mail, greataxe, shield, short bow  
C with 20 arrows

Standard of Living Martial





# - DWARVES OF THE GREY MOUNTAINS -

## BARIN GREYCLOAK

You grew up wandering the Grey Mountain Narrows, ever in the shadow of your ancestral home. Occasionally you mustered up the courage to venture into the mountains themselves, delving in empty caves and holes, trading what you brought down from the mountains with the Men of Lake-town.

Now, with Erebor rebuilt, you wonder if somewhere, deep in the mountains, the mansion of your kin might also be regained, and you seek out a company of heroes to aid you in your search.



# ADVENTURES IN MIDDLE-EARTH™

<b>class &amp; level</b>	Wanderer 1	<b>back-ground</b>	Reluctant Adventurer	<b>player name</b>
<b>culture</b>	Dwarves of the Grey Mountains	<b>shadow weakness</b>	Wandering-madness	<b>experience points</b>

**character name** Barin

**Strength**  
14  
+2

**Dexterity**  
10  
+0

**Constitution**  
15  
+2

**Intelligence**  
8  
-1

**Wisdom**  
16  
+3

**Charisma**  
12  
+1

**Shadow**  
0  
Permanent  
0

**Inspiration**

+2 **Proficiency Bonus**

**saving throws**

- +4 Strength
- +0 Dexterity
- +4 Constitution
- 1 Intelligence
- +3 Wisdom
- +3 Corruption
- +1 Charisma

**skills**

- +0 Acrobatics (Dex)
- +5 Animal Handling (Wis)
- +2 Athletics (Str)
- +1 Deception (Cha)
- 1 History (Int)
- +5 Insight (Wis)
- +1 Intimidation (Cha)
- 1 Investigation (Int)
- 1 Lore (Int)
- +5 Medicine (Wis)
- +1 Nature (Int)
- +5 Perception (Wis)
- +1 Performance (Cha)
- +1 Persuasion (Cha)
- 1 Riddle (Int)
- 1 Shadow-lore (Int)
- +0 Sleight of Hand (Dex)
- +2 Stealth (Dex)
- +5 Survival (Wis)
- 1 Traditions (Int)

**Armour Class**  
12  
(14 with Shield)

**Initiative**  
+0

**Speed**  
25 feet

**current hit points**  
12

Hit Point Maximum 12

**temporary hit points**

**miserable**

**hit dice**  
1d10

Total \_\_\_\_\_

**death saves**

Successes

Failures

**CHARACTER TRAITS**

**Distinctive Quality**

**Wary.** You don't trust anyone out here in the strange wilderness; everyone is out to get you.

---

**Specialty**

**Tunnelling.** Few know the caves and tunnels – and the dangers contained therein – as well as you do.

---

**Hope**

I revel in the camaraderie that I've never had at home, even when it's under such miserable conditions.

---

**Despair**

I shall never see my home again.

15 **Passive Perception (wisdom)**

**other proficiencies & languages**

**Tools for War** – You have proficiency with axes, hand-axes, great axes, hammers and mattocks. Proficient with mason's tools and harp

**Languages** – You can speak, read, and write Dalish, which is the tongue of the Bardings, who speak an older version of the Common Tongue. You can also speak, read and write the secret language of your people, which has never been shared with others.

**attacks**

Name	Att. Bonus	Damage/Type
Mattock	+4	2d6 +2 piercing
Great Bow*	+2	1d8 piercing

\*You can shoot your great bow up to 150 feet, or up to 600 feet with Disadvantage.

**equipment**

G A travelling cloak, travelling gear for the current season, a bedroll, a belt dagger, hunting trap, hide armour, mattock, shield, great bow

S 7

C

**Standard of Living** Frugal

**features, traits, and virtues**

**Night Vision** - You can see in dim light 60 ft as bright light, but cannot see in the dark

**Dwarven Resilience** – You have Advantage on saving throws against poison, and you have resistance against poison damage.

**Stonecunning** – Whenever you make an **Intelligence (History)** check related to the origin of stonework, you are considered proficient in the History skill and add double your Proficiency Bonus to the check, instead of your normal Proficiency Bonus.

**Born to the Road** – When beginning a journey where you serve as Guide for the Company, you may spend Inspiration instead of making an Embarkation Roll. You may choose one of the following results: Fine Weather, Paths Both Swift and True or Hidden from the Shadow.

**Pathetic and Bedraggled** - Folks often take pity on you and offer you a meal or a safe place to stay.

**Known lands** - You have 6 regions that you know well. See page 82 of the *Player's Guide* for more information.

**Ways of the Wild** - You have Advantage on Survival checks to track someone and can fill in for any missing journey roles.

**Cultural Virtue:** None.

# - index -

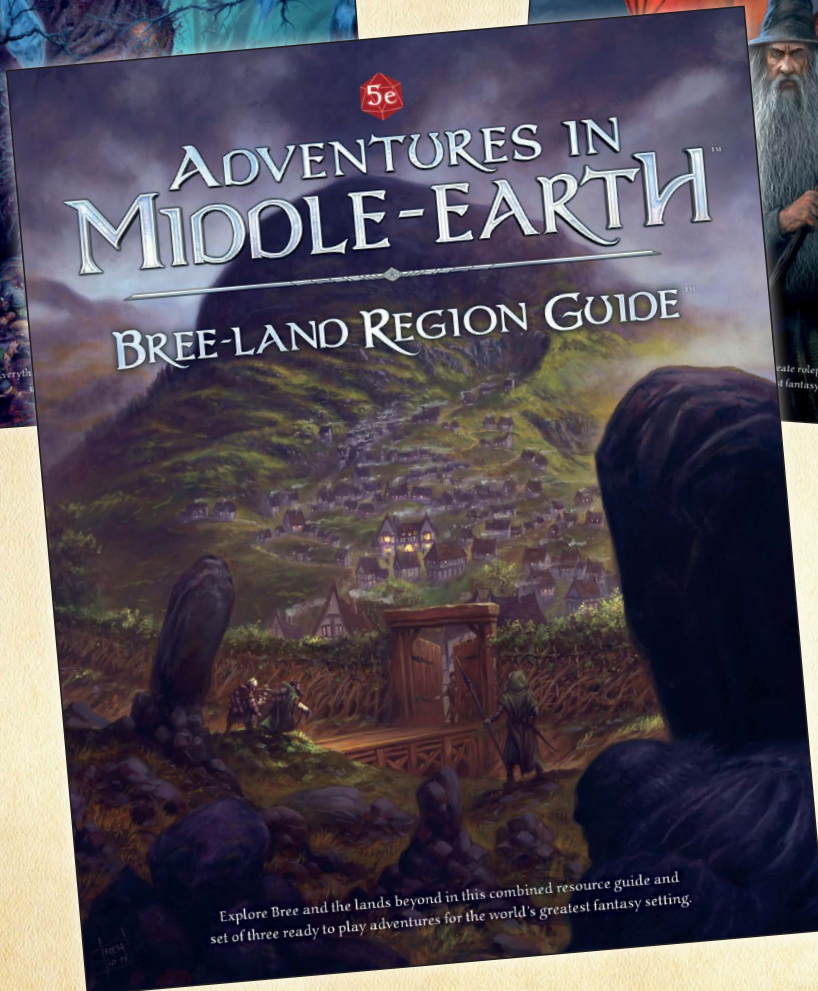
A					
Aftermath	111	Cold-drakes	84	Smiting Malice	91
Age	83	Combat Scenery for Towns	37	Snake-like Speed	91
Alduna	78	(The) Coming of the Dragon	36	Stench	91
All Manner of Dwarves	128	(The) Commons	48	Thing of Terror	91
Anvil Way	44	Concerning Dragons	81	Tough Hide	91
Anvil Way Smith	45	Courtier	46	Wing Attack	91
(The) Arkenstone of Thráin	17	(The) Crossings of Celduin	80	Weak Spot	91
(The) Armour of Náin	112	D		Winged	91
Attacking the Silver Shadow	101	Dragon Aging	85	Dragon-bane	96
(An) Audience with Dáin	19	Dáin as a Patron	20	Dragon Hoards	93
(An) Audience with Kibiluzn	101	Dáin Ironfoot, King under		(A) Dragon of Greater Power	103
(An) Audience with the King	51	the Mountain	18, 20	Dragon-scale Brooch	96
		Dale	35	Dragons of the Third Age	99
		(Describing) Dale	38	Durin's Bane	6
		Dale Map	39	Durin's Ring	112
		Dale's City Guard	48	Dwalin the Warrior	26
		(A) Dangerous Conversation	104	Dwarf Player-heroes and the War	106
		Dark for Dark Business	134	Dwarven Craftsmanship	29
		(A) Deadly Cold	105	Dwarven Grudges	112
		(The) Death of Smaug and the Rise		Dwarven Smithing	33
		of King Bard	36	(Extended Example of)	
		(The) Deeps	17	Dwarven-smithing	34
		(The) Desertion of Erebor	6	(Famous) Dwarven Weapons	
		Dori the Merchant	25	and Armour	31
		Dorwinion	77	Agarial	31
		Draconic Features	88	Angrenithil	32
		Acid-bile	88	(The) Black Axe of Beleriand	31
		Armour of Tenfold Shields	88	Drake-bane	32
		Baleful Gaze	88	(The) Shield of Anar (Rhingalad)	31
		Blazing Wrath	88	War-mask of Belegost	32
		Broken	88	Dwarves of the Grey Mountains	132
		Craven	89	Cultural Attitudes	134
		Crushing Tail-Grip	89	Cultural Heirlooms	134
		Deadly Tail Grip	89	Cultural Virtues	134
		Draconic Resistance	89	Description	133
		Frightful Presence	89	Dwarf Traits	133
		Fell Speed	89	Names of the Grey Mountains	133
		Fire Breath	89	Standard of Living	133
		Fleet of Wing	89	Dwarves of the Iron Hills	129
		Gem Waistcoat	89	Cultural Attitudes	131
		Gimlet Eyed	90	Cultural Heirlooms	131
		Hatred	90	Cultural Virtues	131
		Horrible Strength	90	Description	130
		Legendary	90	Dwarven Names	130
		Mesmerise	90	Dwarf Traits	130
		Multiattack	90	Standard of Living	130
		Noxious Vapours	90		
		Piercing Words	90	E	
		Poison Blast	90	Edric's Town	59
		Region-dweller	90	Effects on Shadow	28
		Savage Assault	91	Ellaras the Searcher	66
		Scaly Hide	91	Elstan, First Captain of Dale	52
		Sinister Speech	91		
B					
(The) Back Door	16				
Balin the Statesman	24				
Bard as a Patron	51				
Bard the Dragon-slayer, King of Dale	51				
Barding Courtiers	46				
Barding Nobles	46				
Barin Greycloak	137-138				
(The) Battle of Azanulbizar	111				
Battling Lytegan	103				
Beinharn	67				
Bifur the Trader	22				
Bite	86				
Biting-storm	96				
(The) Bitter Years	7				
(The) Black Arrow of Bard	96				
Blighted Dreams	110				
(The) Blockades of the Late War	109				
Bofur the Miner	22				
Bombur the Fat	23				
Breed	84				
Brindal, Enterprising Thief	53				
Brokenstone	49				
Bryni, Lord of Strandburg	57				
C					
Castle Ormond	59				
Catastrophe amidst the Middle Years	108				
Challenge Rating	88				
(The) Chamber of Mazarbul					
under Erebor	16				
(A) Chill and Windswept Grave	63				
City Guard	48				
(The) City of Dale	37				
Cold-drake Burrows	64				

(New) Enchanted Qualities	30	(The) Grey Mountains	65	Khazad-dûm and Eregion	30
Fierce	30	Inhabitants	66	Kibiluzn	100, 101
Fireproof	30	Notable Characters	66	(The) Kingdom Under the Mountain	5
Masterpiece	30	Notable Places	67	(The) King's Council	13
Runes of Resilience	31	Wildlife	65		
Venomed	31	Grimarr's Hall	64	L	
Entering the Lonely Mountain	11	Guard Commander	49	Lair Actions	92
Erebor	9, 30	H		Disorienting Mists	92
Erebor Map	10	Hakon, Barding Noble	61	Echoes of Laughter	92
Erna	63	Hatching a Dragon	82	Freezing Fog	92
(The) Eve of War	106	Step 1: Choose Age and Breed	83	Smoke and Flame	92
(Negative) Expectations	86	Step 2: Define Personality	85	Unstable Ground	92
(Positive) Expectations	86	Step 3: Choose Actions and Features	86	Vile Odour	92
Exploring the Restored Kingdoms	114	Step 4: Lair and Hoard	91	(The) Lair of the Marsh-dwellers	75
F		Step 5: Choose a Name and Backstory	95	(The) Lands about the Mountain	56
(The) Fall of Mount Gundabad	108	(A) History of Dale	35	(The) Last Home of the Dwarves	9
Fancy Baubles	93	(A) History of Erebor	6	Legendary Weapons and Armour	112
Features	87	Hit Points	86	(The) Lightly Fingered	43
(New) Fellowship Phase Undertakings	28	(The) Hoard of the Marsh-dwellers	76	(The) Long Marshes	73
Commission a Smith of Anvil Way	54	(The) Hoary Mountain	67	Inhabitants	74
Dwarven-Smithing	33	How to use the Lonely Mountain Region Guide	4	Notable Characters	74
Join the King's Hunt	54	Hunting Dragons	96	Notable Places	74
Offer Counsel at the Royal Court	54	Hunting the Forest Dragon	99	Wildlife	74
Pay Homage to the Ravens of Ravenhill	28			(The) Long Sleep of Dragons	83
Stay at The Missing Scale	55			Long-worms	84
Study the Stonework of Beinharn	68			(The) Lower Halls	15
Take Apprenticeship with a Dwarven Smith	55	I		Lytegan	102, 104
Visit Thorin's Tomb	28	(The) Ice Terrace	18	M	
Fire-drakes	84	Introduction	4	Market Square	41
(The) Fireheart Mine	68	(The) Iron Guard	14	Meeting a Dragon	97
(The) First Founding	35	(The) Iron Hills	72	Meeting Lytegan	103
(A) Foe Beyond Any of You	88	Ironfoot Hauberks	131	Merchants of Dale	41
(The) Folk of Durin	5	Ironthorpe	72	(The) Merchants Quarter	41
Folk of Stone	128	J		(The) Merchants Way	40
(The) Forest Dragon	99, 100	Journey Event Table Entry 1	115	(The) Missing Scale	43
(The) Forges	15	Journey Event Table Entry 2	116	Móna, Daughter of Ginar	135-136
(The) Founding of Erebor	6	Journey Event Table Entry 3	117	Motivation	85
(The) Front Gate	11	Journey Event Table Entry 4	118	(The) Mountain's Sides	17
G		Journey Event Table Entry 5	119	Munin, Keeper of Records	20
Galford	59	Journey Event Table Entry 6	120	(The) Mustering of the Host	107
Galion	74	Journey Event Table Entry 7	121	N	
Garrick of the Black Arrow	58	Journey Event Table Entry 8	122	(The) Nether Marches	76
(The) Gates of Dale	40	Journey Event Table Entry 9	123	Inhabitants	77
Glóin the Emissary	21	Journey Event Table Entry 10	124	Notable Characters	78
(The) Great Chamber of Thrór	13	Journey Event Table Entry 11	125	Notable Places	79
(The) Great Hall of Thráin	15	Journey Event Table Entry 12	126	Wildlife	76
Great Materials	34	K		(The) Netherwood	80
(The) Great Stone Cairn	72	Kajus the Easterling	78	(The) Nest	48
(The) Great Worms	81	Khazad-dûm	29	Noble	47
				Nogrod and Belegost	29
				Nori the Toy-maker	27

(The) Northern Dalelands	56	Residential Quarter	48	(The) Toy-market of Dale	42
Inhabitants	56	(The) Restoration of Erebor	8	(The) Tracker Looe	79
Notable Characters	57	(The) River Running	13, 79	Treasure of the Dwarves	29
Notable Places	59	Riverstead	79	Treasures to Slay a Dragon	96
Wildlife	56	Roac the Raven	20	Treasures of the War of Vengeance	112
Notable Characters	18, 51	Royal Archers of Dale	47		
		Royal Barracks	47		
O		Royal Palace	45	U	
Of Dwarves and Men	36	Rugash the Serpent, Orc-Chieftain	62	(The) Upper Halls	11
(The) Old Dwarf Road	72	Rumours of Dragons	97	(The) Upper Marches	69
Old Quarter	49	S		Inhabitants	70
Óin the Healer	21	Sark the Bear-skinned	71	Notable Characters	70
Ori the Scribe	26	Scatha's Tooth	96	Notable Places	72
		(The) Second Kingdom and the		Wildlife	69
P		Founding of Dale	7	Urban Journeys	114
(The) Passing of Years	4	Size	86		
Planning and Scheming	107	(The) Smiths of Erebor	15	W	
Proficiency Bonus	86	Snapfire Alley	50	(The) War of the Dwarves and Orcs	106
		(The) South Quay	41	(The) War of Vengeance	108
Q		Speaking with the Forest Dragon	99	(The) Waste	60
(The) Quays	40	Stangard	15	Inhabitants	60
Queen Una the Fair	52	Staying in Erebor	27	Notable Characters	61
(The) Quest for Erebor and the Battle of		Stone Guard	12	Notable Places	63
Five Armies	8	(The) Surviving Members of		Wildlife	60
		Thorin's Company	21	(Staying at the) Water House	49
R		Sworn Allegiance	131	(The) Water House	49
Raenar	104, 105	T		White Lane	44
Ravenhill	18	Tail-Lash	87	(The) Withered Heath	68
Ravensgate District	44	Things to do while in Dale	54	Witherfinger	61
(The) Red Axe of Dáin	112	Things to do while in Erebor	27	Wondrous Artefacts	112
(The) Redwater	79	Thorin Stonehelm	70	(The) Wood of Hanging Trees	74
Regional Effects	92	Thráin's Towers	17	Worm Axe	134
Desolation	92	Thrall (Other Creature)	58		
Treacherous	92	(The) Tomb of Thorin Oakenshield	16	Z	
(The) Reign of Smaug	7			Zirakinbar	68
Rend	87				

# ADVENTURES IN MIDDLE-EARTH™

## BREE-LAND REGION GUIDE™





Welcome to Bree and The Inn of the Prancing Pony!

Nestled at the foot of the ancient landmark of the Bree-hill, Bree and *The Prancing Pony* provide a welcome respite from the trials of the road. With a wisdom all its own, Bree has endured for centuries, minding its own business and serving passing travellers with good food and better beer.

Surrounded by deserted and dangerous lands, and watched over by the mysterious Rangers of the North, Bree is the ideal place to begin a new journey or take a rest from a wearying one!

Bree-land Region Guide includes

- Details of the Bree-land, including Bree itself, Archet, Combe and Staddle
- Things to do in Bree: new undertakings and suggested adventure seeds
- Maps of Bree-land, Bree and *The Prancing Pony*
- A complete set of customised journey tables for the Bree-land
- A new playable culture, The Dwarves of the Blue Mountains
- Three exciting adventures that begin at level 1 and carry the heroes to 4th level or beyond: *Old Bones and Skin*, *Strange Men*, *Strange Roads* and *Holed Up in Staddle*

CB72310  
978-0-85744-341-0  
www.cubicle7.co.uk



The One Ring, Middle-earth, The Hobbit, The Lord of the Rings, and the characters, items, events and places therein are trademarks or registered trademarks of The Saul Zaentz Company d/b/a Middle-earth Enterprises and are used under license by Sophisticated Games Ltd and their respective licensees. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publishers.

The following text is the property of Wizards of the Coast, Inc. and is Copyright 2000 Wizards of the Coast, Inc ("Wizards"). All Rights Reserved.

1. Definitions: (a) "Contributors" means the copyright and/or trademark owners who have contributed Open Game Content; (b) "Derivative Material" means copyrighted material including derivative works and translations (including into other computer languages), potation, modification, correction, addition, extension, upgrade, improvement, compilation, abridgment or other form in which an existing work may be recast, transformed or adapted; (c) "Distribute" means to reproduce, license, rent, lease, sell, broadcast, publicly display, transmit or otherwise distribute; (d) "Open Game Content" means the game mechanic and includes the methods, procedures, processes and routines to the extent such content does not embody the Product Identity and is an enhancement over the prior art and any additional content clearly identified as Open Game Content by the Contributor, and means any work covered by this License, including translations and derivative works under copyright law, but specifically excludes Product Identity. (e) "Product Identity" means product and product line names, logos and identifying marks including trade dress; artifacts; creatures characters; stories, storylines, plots, thematic elements, dialogue, incidents, language, artwork, symbols, designs, depictions, likenesses, formats, poses, concepts, themes and graphic, photographic and other visual or audio representations; names and descriptions of characters, spells, enchantments, personalities, teams, personas, likenesses and special abilities; places, locations, environments, creatures, equipment, magical or supernatural abilities or effects, logos, symbols, or graphic designs; and any other trademark or registered trademark clearly identified as Product identity by the owner of the Product Identity, and which specifically excludes the Open Game Content; (f) "Trademark" means the logos, names, mark, sign, motto, designs that are used by a Contributor to identify itself or its products or the associated products contributed to the Open Game License by the Contributor (g) "Use", "Used" or "Using" means to use, Distribute, copy, edit, format, modify, translate and otherwise create Derivative Material of Open Game Content. (h) "You" or "Your" means the licensee in terms of this agreement.

2. The License: This License applies to any Open Game Content that contains a notice indicating that the Open Game Content may only be Used under and in terms of this License. You must affix such a notice to any Open Game Content that you Use. No terms may be added to or subtracted from this License except as described by the License itself. No other terms or conditions may be applied to any Open Game Content distributed using this License.

3. Offer and Acceptance: By Using the Open Game Content You indicate Your acceptance of the terms of this License.

4. Grant and Consideration: In consideration for agreeing to use this License, the Contributors grant You a perpetual, worldwide, royalty free, non exclusive license with the exact terms of this License to Use, the Open Game Content.

5. Representation of Authority to Contribute: If You are contributing original material as Open Game Content, You represent that Your Contributions are Your original creation and/or You have sufficient rights to grant the rights conveyed by this License.

6. Notice of License Copyright: You must update the COPYRIGHT NOTICE portion of this License to include the exact text of the COPYRIGHT NOTICE of any Open Game Content You are copying, modifying or distributing, and You must add the title, the copyright date, and the copyright holder's name to the COPYRIGHT NOTICE of any original Open Game Content you Distribute.

7. Use of Product Identity: You agree not to Use any Product Identity, including as an indication as to compatibility, except as expressly licensed in another, independent Agreement with the owner of each element of that

Product Identity. You agree not to indicate compatibility or co adaptability with any Trademark or Registered Trademark in conjunction with a work containing Open Game Content except as expressly licensed in another, independent Agreement with the owner of such Trademark or Registered Trademark. The use of any Product Identity in Open Game Content does not constitute a challenge to the ownership of that Product Identity. The owner of any Product Identity used in Open Game Content shall retain all rights, title and interest in and to that Product Identity.

8. Identification: If you distribute Open Game Content You must clearly indicate which portions of the work that you are distributing are Open Game Content.

9. Updating the License: Wizards or its designated Agents may publish updated versions of this License. You may use any authorized version of this License to copy, modify and distribute any Open Game Content originally distributed under any version of this License.

10. Copy of this License: You MUST include a copy of this License with every copy of the Open Game Content You Distribute.

11. Use of Contributor Credits: You may not market or advertise the Open Game Content using the name of any Contributor unless You have written permission from the Contributor to do so.

12. Inability to Comply: If it is impossible for You to comply with any of the terms of this License with respect to some or all of the Open Game Content due to statute, judicial order, or governmental regulation then You may not Use any Open Game Material so affected.

13. Termination: This License will terminate automatically if You fail to comply with all terms herein and fail to cure such breach within 30 days of becoming aware of the breach. All sublicenses shall survive the termination of this License.

14. Reformation: If any provision of this License is held to be unenforceable, such provision shall be reformed only to the extent necessary to make it enforceable.

#### 15. COPYRIGHT NOTICE

Open Game License v 1.0a Copyright 2000, Wizards of the Coast, LLC.

**System Reference Document 5.1** Copyright 2016, Wizards of the Coast, Inc.; Authors Mike Mearls, Jeremy Crawford, Chris Perkins, Rodney Thompson, Peter Lee, James Wyatt, Robert J. Schwalb, Bruce R. Cordell, Chris Sims, and Steve Townshend, based on original material by E. Gary Gygax and Dave Arneson.

**Adventures in Middle-earth Player's Guide** Copyright 2016 Cubicle 7 Entertainment Ltd/Sophisticated Games Ltd; Authors: James Brown, Paul Butler, Walt Ciechanowski, Steve Emmott, Gareth Ryder-Hanrahan, Jon Hodgson, Shane Ivey, Andrew Kenrick, TS Luikart, Dominic McDowall, Francesco Nepitello, James Spahn, Ken Spencer.

**Adventures in Middle-earth Loremaster's Guide** Copyright 2017 Cubicle 7 Entertainment Ltd/Sophisticated Games Ltd; Authors: Walt Ciechanowski, Steve Emmott, Jon Hodgson, TS Luikart, Dominic McDowall, Francesco Nepitello, David Rea, Jacob Rodgers, Gareth Ryder-Hanrahan and Ken Spencer.

**Adventures in Middle-earth Lonely Mountain Region Guide** Copyright 2019 Cubicle 7 Entertainment Ltd/Sophisticated Games Ltd; Authors: Gabriel Garcia, Andrew Kenrick, Mark A. Latham, T.S. Luikart, Francesco Nepitello, Jacob Rodgers, James M. Spahn and Kenneth Spencer.

END OF LICENSE